(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau

(43) International Publication Date
26 May 2016 (26.05.2016)

WIPO | PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 2016/081643 A1

(51) International Patent Classification:
C07K 16/28 (2006.01) *C12N 15/13* (2006.01)
C07K 16/40 (2006.01) *A61K 39/395* (2006.01)
C07K 16/46 (2006.01) *A61P 25/00* (2006.01)

(21) International Application Number:
PCT/US2015/061405

(22) International Filing Date:
18 November 2015 (18.11.2015)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
62/081,827 19 November 2014 (19.11.2014) US

(71) Applicant *(for all designated States except AL, AT, BE, BG, BN, CH, CN, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IN, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR)*: **GENENTECH, INC.** [US/US]; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US).

(71) Applicant *(for AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CN, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IN, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR only)*: **F. HOFFMANN-LA ROCHE AG** [CH/CH]; Grenzacherstrasse 124, 4070 Basel (CH).

(72) Inventors: **ZHANG, Yin**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US). **ZUCHERO, Joy Yu**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US). **ATWAL, Jasvinder**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US). **COUCH, Jessica**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US). **DENNIS, Mark S.**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US). **ERNST, James A.**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US). **WATTS, Ryan J.**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US). **LAZAR, Gregory A.**; 1 DNA Way, South San Francisco, California 94080 (US).

(74) Agents: **SCARR, Rebecca B.** et al.; 500 W. Silver Spring Drive, Suite K-200, Glendale, Wisconsin 53217 (US).

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: ANTI-TRANSFERRIN RECEPTOR ANTIBODIES AND METHODS OF USE

(57) Abstract: The present invention relates to anti-transferrin receptor antibodies and methods of their use.

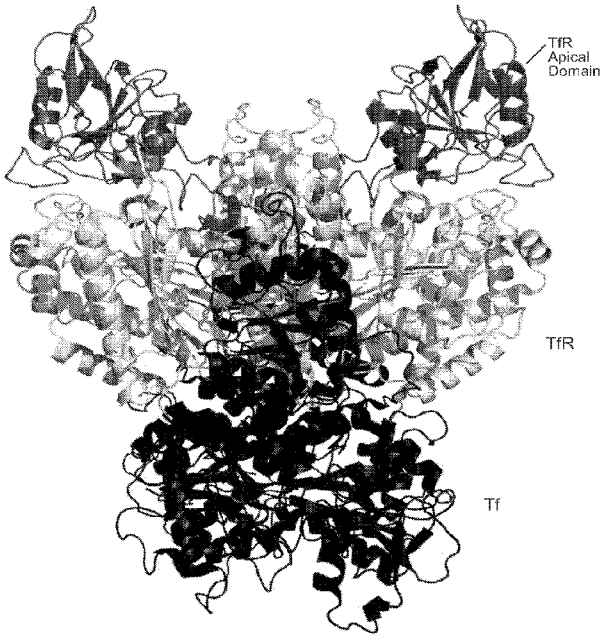


FIG. 1

WO 2016/081643 A1

(81) **Designated States** *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available)*: AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) **Designated States** *(unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available)*: ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— *with international search report (Art. 21(3))*

— *before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments (Rule 48.2(h))*

— *with sequence listing part of description (Rule 5.2(a))*

ANTI-TRANSFERRIN RECEPTOR ANTIBODIES AND METHODS OF USE

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

[001] The present application claims the benefit of priority of US Provisional Application No. 62/081,827, filed November 19, 2014, which is incorporated by reference herein in its entirety for any purpose.

SEQUENCE LISTING

[002] The present application is filed with a Sequence Listing in electronic format. The Sequence Listing is provided as a file entitled "2015-11-18_01146-0042-00PCT_ST25.txt" created on November 18, 2015, which is 130,420 bytes in size. The information in the electronic format of the sequence listing is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

[003] The present invention relates to anti-transferrin receptor antibodies and methods of using the same.

BACKGROUND

[004] Brain penetration of large molecule drugs is severely limited by the largely impermeable blood-brain barrier (BBB). Among the many strategies to overcome this obstacle is to utilize transcytosis trafficking pathways of endogenous receptors expressed at the brain capillary endothelium. Recombinant proteins such as monoclonal antibodies have been designed against these receptors to enable receptor-mediated delivery of large molecules to the brain. Strategies to maximize brain uptake while minimizing reverse transcytosis back to the blood, and to also maximize the extent of accumulation after therapeutic dosing have been addressed with the finding that antibodies with low affinity to BBB receptors offer the potential to substantially increase BBB transport and CNS retention of associated therapeutic moieties/molecules relative to typical high-affinity antibodies to such receptors (Atwal et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* **3**, 84ra43 (2011); Yu et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* 25 May 2011: Vol. 3, Issue 84, p. 84ra44). However, those antibodies did not specifically bind to human and primate TfR.

SUMMARY

[005] Monoclonal antibodies have vast therapeutic potential for treatment of neurological or central nervous system (CNS) diseases, but their passage into the brain is restricted by the blood-brain barrier (BBB). Past studies have shown that a very small percentage (approximately 0.1%) of an IgG circulating in the bloodstream crosses through the BBB into the CNS (Felgenhauer, Klin.

Wschr. 52: 1158-1164 (1974)), where the CNS concentration of the antibody may be insufficient to permit a robust effect. It was previously found that the percentage of the antibody that distributes into the CNS could be improved by exploiting BBB receptors (ie, transferrin receptor, insulin receptorand the like) (see, e.g., WO9502421). For example, the anti-BBB receptor antibody can be made multispecific to target one or more desired antigens in the CNS, or one or more heterologous molecules can be coupled to the anti-BBB receptor antibody; in either case, the anti-BBB receptor antibody can assist in delivering a therapeutic molecule into the CNS across the BBB.

[006] However, targeting a BBB receptor with a traditional specific high-affinity antibody generally resulted in limited increase in BBB transport. It was later found by Applicants that the magnitude of antibody uptake into and distribution in the CNS is inversely related to its binding affinity for the BBB receptor amongst the anti-BBB antibodies studied. For example, a low-affinity antibody to transferrin receptor (TfR) dosed at therapeutic dose levels greatly improves BBB transport and CNS retention of the anti-TfR antibody relative to a higher-affinity anti-TfR antibody, and makes it possible to more readily attain therapeutic concentrations in the CNS (Atwal et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* **3**, 84ra43 (2011)). Proof of such BBB transport was achieved using a bispecific antibody that binds both TfR and the amyloid precursor protein (APP) cleavage enzyme, β-secretase (BACE1). A single systemic dose of the bispecific anti-TfR/BACE1 antibody engineered using the methodology of the invention not only resulted in significant antibody uptake in brain, but also dramatically reduced levels of brain $A\beta_{1-40}$ compared to monospecific anti-BACE1 alone, suggesting that BBB penetrance affects the potency of anti-BACE1. (Atwal et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* **3**, 84ra43 (2011); Yu et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* **3**, 84ra44 (2011)).

[007] Those data and experiments highlighted several causative mechanisms behind increasing uptake of an antibody into the CNS using a lower-affinity antibody approach. First, high affinity anti-BBB receptor (BBB-R) antibodies (e.g., anti-TfR^A from Atwal et al. and Yu et al., *supra*) limit brain uptake by quickly saturating the BBB-R in the brain vasculature, thus reducing the total amount of antibody taken up into the brain and also restricting its distribution to the vasculature. Strikingly, lowering affinity for the BBB-R improves brain uptake and distribution, with a robust shift observed in localization from the vasculature to neurons and associated neuropil distributed within the CNS. Second, the lower affinity of the antibody for the BBB-R is proposed to impair the ability of the antibody to return to the vascular side of the BBB via the BBB-R from the CNS side of the membrane because the overall affinity of the antibody for the BBB-R is low and the local concentration of the antibody on the CNS side of the BBB is non-saturating due to the rapid dispersal of the antibody into the CNS compartment. Third, *in vivo*, and as observed for the TfR system, antibodies with less affinity for the BBB-R are not cleared from the system as efficiently as those with greater affinity for the BBB-R, and thus remain at higher circulating concentrations

than their higher-affinity counterparts. This is advantageous because the circulating antibody levels of the lower-affinity antibody are sustained at therapeutic levels for a longer period of time than the higher-affinity antibody, which consequently improves uptake of antibody in brain for a longer period of time. Furthermore, this improvement in both plasma and brain exposure may reduce the frequency of dosing in the clinic, which would have potential benefit not only for patient compliance and convenience but also in lessening any potential side effects or off-target effects of the antibody and/or of a therapeutic compound coupled thereto.

[008] The low-affinity BBB-R antibodies described in the above-referenced work were selected /engineered to avoid interference with the natural binding between transferrin and the TfR, and thus to avoid potential iron transport-related side effects. Nonetheless, upon administration of certain of these antibodies in mice, some marked side effects were observed. The mice displayed a primary response of robust depletion of reticulocyte populations accompanied by rapid onset acute clinical symptoms. Though the mice recovered from both the acute clinical symptoms and the decreased reticulocyte levels in due course, avoiding or otherwise mitigating this impact on reticulocytes is clearly desirable for an anti-TfR antibody to be able to be used safely as a therapeutic molecule. It was found that the primary response to anti-TfR administration (robust reticulocyte depletion and acute clinical signs) is driven in large part by the antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity of the antibody, while the residual reticulocyte depletion effect is mediated by the complement pathway.

[009] These prior studies utilized mouse antibodies which bound specifically to mouse TfR, but which did not specifically recognize primate or human TfR. Accordingly, the invention provides antibodies and functional parts thereof which do specifically recognize both primate and human TfR, in order to facilitate safety and efficacy studies in primates with the antibodies prior to therapeutic or diagnostic use in humans. In vitro studies using a human erythroblast cell line and primary bone marrow cells treated with the anti-human TfR antibodies of the invention demonstrated that a robust depletion of TfR-positive erythroid cells is also observable in human/primate cellular systems as it is in mice (see, e.g., Example 4). Accordingly, also provided herein are modifications to the antibodies of the invention to greatly reduce or eliminate the unwanted reduction in the TfR-expressing reticulocyte population upon anti-TfR administration while still enabling the enhanced BBB transport, increased CNS distribution and CNS retention provided by the anti-human/primate TfR antibodies administered at therapeutic concentrations. Several general approaches to mitigate the observed effect of the anti-TfR antibodies of the invention on both the primary and residual reticulocyte depletion are provided herein, and may be used singly or in combination.

[0010] In one approach, the effector function of the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody is reduced or eliminated in order to reduce or eliminate ADCC activity. In another approach, the affinity of the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody for human or primate TfR is further lessened such that interactions of the antibody with the reticulocyte population are less detrimental to that population. A third approach is directed to reducing the amount of anti-human/cyno TfR antibody that is present in the plasma to reduce exposure of the reticulocyte population to potentially detrimental concentrations of the antibody. A fourth approach seeks to protect, stabilize and/or replenish reticulocyte populations such that any potential depletion of the reticulocyte population in circulation or in bone marrow by administration of the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody is avoided, lessened, or mitigated.

[0011] Effector function reduction or elimination, as described herein, may be accomplished by: (i) reduction or elimination of wild-type mammalian glycosylation of the antibody, (for example, by producing the antibody in an environment where such glycosylation cannot occur, by mutating one or more carbohydrate attachment points such that the antibody cannot be glycosylated, or by chemically or enzymatically removing one or more carbohydrates from the antibody after it has been glycosylated); (ii) by reduction or elimination of the Fc receptor-binding capability of the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody (for example, by mutation of the Fc region, by deletion within the Fc region or elimination of the Fc region); or (iii) by utilization of an antibody isotype known to have minimal or no effector function (ie., including but not limited to IgG4).

[0012] Decreasing antibody complement activation, as described herein, may be accomplished by reduction or elimination of the C1q binding capability of the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody (for example, by mutation of, deletion within or elimination of the Fc region, or by modifying the non-Fc portion of the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody), or by otherwise suppressing activation or activity of the complement system (for example, by co-administering one or more complement pathway activation or complement pathway activity inhibitors).

[0013] When binding of anti-human/cyno TfR antibody to human or cyno TfR on reticulocytes or other cell types expressing high levels of TfR triggers their depletion, as with the anti-human/cyno TfR antibodies exemplified herein, reduction of binding of the antibodies to the human or cyno TfR on the reticulocytes or other cell types should in turn decrease the amount of reticulocyte or other cell type depletion in circulation or in bone marrow observed upon antibody administration. The affinity of the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody for primate or human TfR may be modified using any of the methods described herein and as shown in the Examples.

[0014] Reducing the amount of anti-human/cyno TfR antibody present in the plasma in order to reduce exposure of the reticulocyte population to potentially detrimental concentrations of the antibody may be accomplished in several ways. One method is to simply decrease the amount of the antibody that is dosed, potentially while also increasing the frequency of the dosing, such that

the maximal concentration in the plasma is lowered but a sufficient serum level is maintained for efficacy, while still below the threshold of the cell-depleting side effect. Another method, which may be combined with dosing modifications, is to select or engineer an anti-TfR antibody that has pH-sensitive binding to TfR such that it binds to cell surface TfR in the plasma at pH 7.4 with desirably low affinity as described herein, but upon internalization into an endosomal compartment, such binding to TfR is rapidly and significantly reduced at the relatively lower pH of that compartment (pH 5.5-6.0). Such dissociation may protect the antibody from antigen-mediated clearance, or increase the amount of antibody that is either delivered to the CNS or recycled back across the BBB – in either case, the effective concentration of the antibody is increased relative to an anti-TfR antibody that does not comprise such pH sensitivity, without increasing the administered dose of the antibody, and in turn potentially permitting a lower dose of the antibody with concomitantly lesser risk of side effects.

[0015] Protecting, stabilizing and/or replenishing reticulocyte populations may be accomplished using pharmaceutical or physical methods. In addition to the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody, at least one further therapeutic agent may be coadministered (simultaneously or sequentially) that mitigates negative side effects of the antibody on reticulocyte populations. Examples of such therapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, erythropoietin (EPO), iron supplements, vitamin C, folic acid, and vitamin B12. Physical replacement of red blood cells (ie, reticulocytes) is also possible by, for example, transfusion with similar cells, which may be from another individual of similar blood type or may have been previously extracted from the subject to whom the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody is administered.

[0016] One of ordinary skill in the art will appreciate that any combination of the foregoing methods may be employed to engineer an antibody (and/or dosage regimen for same) with the optimum balance between (i) the desirably low affinity for primate or human TfR that will maximize transport of the antibody and any conjugated compounds into the CNS; (ii) the affinity of the conjugated compound (including as a nonlimiting example, a second or further antigen-binding specificity in the anti-human/cyno TfR antibody) for its CNS antigen, since this is relevant to the amount of the compound that needs to be present in the CNS to have a therapeutic effect; (iii) the clearance rate of the anti-human/cynoTfR antibody; (iv) the lability of the anti-TfR/conjugated compound at low pH to facilitate release of the conjugated compound on the CNS/brain side of the BBB, and (v) the impact on reticulocyte populations.

[0017] It will also be appreciated that the reticulocyte-depleting effect recognized herein of anti-TfR antibody administration may be useful in the treatment of any disease or disorder where overproliferation of reticulocytes is problematic. For example, in congenital polycythemia or neoplastic polycythemia vera, raised red blood cell counts due to hyperproliferation of, e.g.,

reticulocytes, results in thickening of blood and concomitant physiological symptoms. Administration of an anti-human/cyno TfR antibody of the invention wherein at least partial effector function of the antibody was preserved would permit selective removal of immature reticulocyte populations without impacting normal transferrin transport into the CNS. Dosing of such an antibody could be modulated such that acute clinical symptoms could be minimized (ie, by dosing at a very low dose or at widely-spaced intervals), as well-understood in the art.

[0018] Anti-TfR/BACE1 and anti-TfR/Abeta are each promising and novel therapeutic candidates for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Furthermore, receptor mediated transport (RMT)-based bispecific targeting technology opens the door for a wide range of potential therapeutics for CNS diseases. The invention provides methods of engineering BBB-penetrant therapeutics that greatly improve transport across the BBB and CNS distribution of the therapeutic without depletion of reticulocytes.

[0019] Accordingly, in a first embodiment, the invention provides an isolated antibody that binds to human transferrin receptor (TfR) and primate TfR, wherein the antibody does not inhibit the binding of transferrin to TfR. In some aspects, the binding is specific binding. In another aspect, the antibody further does not inhibit the binding of human hemachromatosis protein ("HFE") to TfR. In some aspects, the binding is specific binding. In some aspects, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is a human antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is a humanized antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is a chimeric antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is an antibody fragment that binds human TfR and primate TfR. In another aspect, the primate TfR is from cynomolgous monkey.

[0020] In any of the embodiments described herein, the antibody comprises a heavy chain variable region (VH) sequence of SEQ ID NO: 158 or 159. In any of the embodiments described herein, the antibody further comprises a light chain variable region (VL) sequence of SEQ ID NO: 162 or 163. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a heavy chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 158 and a light chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 162, or a heavy chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 159 and a light chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 163.

[0021] In some aspects of the above embodiment, the antibody is coupled to a therapeutic compound. In another aspect of the above embodiment, the antibody is coupled to an imaging agent or a label. In one such aspect, the antibody is a multispecific antibody and the therapeutic compound optionally forms one portion of the multispecific antibody. In one such aspect, the multispecific antibody comprises a first antigen binding site which binds TfR and a second antigen binding site which binds a brain antigen. In one such aspect, the brain antigen is selected from the group consisting of: beta-secretase 1 (BACE1), Abeta, epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR),

human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), tau, apolipoprotein E (ApoE), alpha-synuclein, CD20, huntingtin, prion protein (PrP), leucine rich repeat kinase 2 (LRRK2), parkin, presenilin 1, presenilin 2, gamma secretase, death receptor 6 (DR6), amyloid precursor protein (APP), p75 neurotrophin receptor (p75NTR), and caspase 6. In another such aspect, the multispecific antibody binds both TfR and BACE1. In another such aspect, the multispecific antibody binds both TfR and Abeta. In another such aspect, the therapeutic compound is a neurological disorder drug.

[0022] In some embodiments, the multispecific antibody comprises a first heavy chain comprising the sequence of SEQ ID NO: 160 and a first light chain comprising the sequence of SEQ ID NO: 161.

[0023] In some aspects of the above embodiment, the invention provides an isolated nucleic acid encoding any of the foregoing antibodies. In another aspect, the invention provides a host cell comprising such nucleic acid. In another aspect, the invention provides a method of producing any of the foregoing antibodies comprising culturing such host cell so that the antibody is produced and optionally further comprising recovering the antibody from the host cell.

[0024] In some aspects of the above embodiment, the invention provides a pharmaceutical formulation comprising any of the foregoing antibodies and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

[0025] In some aspects of the above embodiment, the invention provides any of the foregoing antibodies for use as a medicament. In another aspect of the above embodiment, the invention provides the use of any of the foregoing antibodies in the manufacture of a medicament for treating a neurological disorder. In one such aspect, the neurological disorder is selected from the group consisting of a neuropathy disorder, a neurodegenerative disease, cancer, an ocular disease disorder, a seizure disorder, a lysosomal storage disease, amyloidosis, a viral or microbial disease, ischemia, a behavioral disorder, and CNS inflammation.

[0026] In another aspect of the above embodiment, the invention provides any of the foregoing antibodies for use in treating a neurological disorder. In one such aspect, the neurological disorder is selected from the group consisting of a neuropathy disorder, a neurodegenerative disease, cancer, an ocular disease disorder, a seizure disorder, a lysosomal storage disease, amyloidosis, a viral or microbial disease, ischemia, a behavioral disorder, and CNS inflammation.

[0027] In another aspect of the above embodiment, the invention provides any of the foregoing antibodies for use in transporting one or more compounds across the BBB. In another aspect of the above embodiment, use of any of the foregoing antibodies in the manufacture of a medicament for transporting one or more compounds across the BBB is provided.

[0028] In some aspects of the above embodiment, a method of transporting a compound across the BBB in a subject is provided, comprising exposing any of the foregoing antibodies to the BBB such that the antibody transports the compound coupled thereto across the BBB. In another such

aspect, the BBB is in a human subject. In another such aspect, the dose amount and/or frequency of administration is modulated to reduce the concentration of antibody to which red blood cells are exposed. In another such aspect, the method further comprises the step of monitoring the subject for depletion of red blood cells. In another such aspect, the antibody coupled to the compound is administered at a therapeutic dose. In one such aspect, the therapeutic dose is TfR-saturating. In another such aspect, administration of the antibody is at a dose and/or dose frequency calibrated to minimize acute clinical symptoms of the antibody administration.

[0029] In another aspect of the above embodiment, a method of increasing exposure of the CNS of a subject to a compound is provided, comprising exposing any of the foregoing antibodies to the BBB such that the antibody transports the compound coupled thereto across the BBB. In another such aspect, the BBB is in a human subject. In another such aspect, the dose amount and/or frequency of administration is modulated to reduce the concentration of antibody to which red blood cells are exposed. In another such aspect, the method further comprises the step of monitoring the subject for depletion of red blood cells. In another such aspect, the antibody coupled to the compound is administered at a therapeutic dose. In one such aspect, the therapeutic dose is TfR-saturating. In another such aspect, administration of the antibody is at a dose and/or dose frequency calibrated to minimize acute clinical symptoms of the antibody administration.

[0030] In some aspects of the above embodiment, a method of increasing rentention in the CNS of a compound administered to a subject is provided, comprising exposing any of the foregoing antibodies to the BBB such that the retention in the CNS of the compound is increased. In another such aspect, the BBB is in a human subject. In another such aspect, the dose amount and/or frequency of administration is modulated to reduce the concentration of antibody to which red blood cells are exposed. In another such aspect, the method further comprises the step of monitoring the subject for depletion of red blood cells. In another such aspect, the antibody coupled to the compound is administered at a therapeutic dose. In one such aspect, the therapeutic dose is TfR-saturating. In another such aspect, administration of the antibody is at a dose and/or dose frequency calibrated to minimize acute clinical symptoms of the antibody administration.

[0031] In some aspects of the above embodiment, a method of treating a neurological disorder in a mammal is provided, comprising treating the mammal with any of the foregoing antibodies. In one such aspect, the neurological disorder is selected from the group consisting of a neuropathy disorder, a neurodegenerative disease, cancer, an ocular disease disorder, a seizure disorder, a lysosomal storage disease, amyloidosis, a viral or microbial disease, ischemia, a behavioral disorder, and CNS inflammation. In another such aspect, the neurological disorder is in a human subject. In another such aspect, the dose amount and/or frequency of administration is modulated to reduce the concentration of antibody to which the re blood cells are exposed. In another such

aspect, the method further comprises the step of monitoring the subject for depletion of red blood cells. In another such aspect, the antibody coupled to the compound is administered at a therapeutic dose. In one such aspect, the therapeutic dose is TfR-saturating. In another such aspect, administration of the antibody is at a dose and/or dose frequency calibrated to minimize acute clinical symptoms of the antibody administration.

[0032] In another embodiment, the invention provides an isolated antibody that binds to human TfR and primate TfR, wherein the antibody does not inhibit the binding of transferrin to TfR, and wherein one or more properties of the antibody have been modified to reduce or eliminate the impact of the antibody on reticulocytes and/or reduce the severity or presence of acute clinical symptoms in a subject or mammal treated with the antibody. In some aspects, the binding is specific binding. In another aspect, the antibody further does not inhibit the binding of HFE to TfR. In some aspects, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is a human antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is a humanized antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is a chimeric antibody. In another aspect, the antibody is an antibody fragment that binds human TfR and primate TfR. In another aspect, the primate TfR is from cynomolgous monkey.

[0033] In some aspects of the above embodiment, the one or more properties of the antibody are selected from the effector function of the antibody Fc region, the complement activation function of the antibody and the affinity of the antibody for TfR. In one such aspect, the property is the effector function of the antibody Fc region. In another such aspect, the property is the complement activation function of the antibody. In another such aspect, the property is the affinity of the antibody for TfR. In one such aspect, the effector function or complement activation function has been reduced or eliminated relative to a wild-type antibody of the same isotype. In some aspects, the effector function is reduced or eliminated by a method selected from reduction of glycosylation of the antibody, modification of the antibody isotype to an isotype that naturally has reduced or eliminated effector function, and modification of the Fc region.

[0034] In one such aspect, the effector function is reduced or eliminated by reduction of glycosylation of the antibody. In one such aspect, the glycosylation of the antibody is reduced by a method selected from: production of the antibody in an environment that does not permit wild-type glycosylation; removal of carbohydrate groups already present on the antibody; and modification of the antibody such that wild-type glycosylation does not occur. In one such aspect, the glycosylation of the antibody is reduced by a production of the antibody in an environment that does not permit wild-type glycosylation, such as production in a non-mammalian cell production system or where the antibody is produced synthetically. In one such aspect, the antibody is produced in a non-mammalian cell production system. In another such aspect, the antibody is produced synthetically. In another such aspect, the glycosylation of the antibody is reduced by

modification of the antibody such that wild-type glycosylation does not occur, such as wherein the Fc region of the antibody comprises a mutation at position 297 such that the wild-type asparagine residue at that position is replaced with another amino acid that interferes with glycosylation at that position.

[0035] In another such aspect, the effector function is reduced or eliminated by at least one modification of the Fc region. In one such aspect, the effector function or complement activation function is reduced or eliminated by deletion of all or a portion of the Fc region, or by engineering the antibody such that it does not include an Fc region or non-Fc region competent for effector function or complement activation function. In another such aspect, the at least one modification of the Fc region is selected from: a point mutation of the Fc region to impair binding to one or more Fc receptors selected from the following positions: 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 301, 303, 322, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 414, 416, 419, 434, 435, 437, 438, and 439; a point mutation of the Fc region to impair binding to C1q selected from the following positions: 270, 322, 329, and 321; eliminating some or all of the Fc region, and a point mutation at position 132 of the CH1 domain. In one such aspect, the modification is a point mutation of the Fc region to impair binding to C1q selected from the following positions: 270, 322, 329, and 321. In another such aspect, the modification is elimination of some or all of the Fc region. In another such aspect, complement-triggering function is reduced or eliminated by deletion of all or a portion of the Fc region, or by engineering the antibody such that it does not include an Fc region that engages the complement pathway. In one such aspect, the antibody is selected from a Fab or a single chain antibody. In another such aspect, the non-Fc region of the antibody is modified to reduce or eliminate activation of the complement pathway by the antibody. In one such aspect, the modification is a point mutation of the CH1 region to impair binding to C3. In one such aspect, the point mutation is at position 132 (see, e.g., Vidarte et al., (2001) J. Biol. Chem. 276(41): 38217-38223).

[0036] In some aspects, the antibody the half-life of the antibody is increased by a modification in the FcRn binding region. In some aspects, the modification is a substitution in an amino acid selected from the following positions: 251 256, 285, 290, 308, 314, 385, 389, 428, 434, 436, 238, 265, 272, 286, 303, 305, 307, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 413, 424 or 434. In some aspects the modification is a substitution selected from the following: M252Y, S254T, T256E, N434A and Y436I.

[0037] In some aspects, the antibody is combined with a further compound that mitigates or contributes to the reduction of impact on reticulocyte levels or acute clinical symptoms. In one such aspect, the further compound protects reticulocytes from antibody-related depletion or supports the growth, development, or reestablishment of reticulocytes. In another such aspect, the

further compound is selected from erythropoietin (EPO), an iron supplement, vitamin C, folic acid, and vitamin B12, or is red blood cells or reticulocytes.

[0038] In some aspects of the above embodiment, the affinity of the antibody for TfR is decreased, as measured relative to a wild-type antibody of the same isotype not having lowered affinity for TfR. In one such aspect, the antibody has a KD or IC50 for TfR of about 1 pM to about 100 μM, or about 10 nM to 100 nM, or about 20 nM to 100 nM. In another aspect, the dose amount and/or frequency of administration of the antibody is modulated to reduce the concentration of the antibody to which the red blood cells are exposed.

[0039] In another embodiment, a method of decreasing clearance of a compound administered to a subject is provided, wherein the compound is coupled to an antibody which binds with low affinity to TfR, such that the clearance of the compound is decreased, and wherein reduction of red blood cell levels in the subject upon compound-coupled antibody administration to the subject is decreased or eliminated.

[0040] In another embodiment, a method of optimizing the pharmcokinetics and/or pharmacodynamics of a compound to be efficacious in the CNS in a subject is provided, wherein the compound is coupled to an antibody which binds with low affinity to TfR, and the antibody is selected such that its affinity for TfR after coupling to the compound results in an amount of transport of the antibody conjugated to the compound across the BBB that optimizes the pharmacokinetics and/or pharmacodynamics of the compound in the CNS, wherein reduction of red blood cell levels in the subject upon compound-coupled antibody administration to the subject is decreased or eliminated.

[0041] It will be understood that any of the foregoing methods and compositions of the invention may be combined with one another and/or with the further aspects of the invention described in the specification herein.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

[0042] Figure 1 depicts a three-dimensional crystal structure of a TfR dimer in complex with Tf, based on the pdb file 3SM9. The non-Tf-binding apical region of TfR is labeled.

[0043] Figures 2A-2B depict FACS analysis of mouse hybridoma parental clone supernatants binding to human and cynomolgus TfR transiently expressed in 293 cells in the presence of 1 μM human holo-Tf. Unless otherwise indicated, the filled grey trace in each graph is background from the detection antibody, the medium grey trace is binding to 293 cells that endogenously express basal levels of human TfR, the bold black trace represents binding to transiently expressed human TfR and the thin grey trace represents binding to transiently expressed cyno TfR.

[0044] Figure 2C depicts the results of human/cynomolgous cross-reactive antibody competition assays as described in Example 1. Nine of the fourteen clones were found to block binding of the apical binding antibody displayed on phage.

[0045] Figures 3A-1, 3A-2, 3B-1, 3B-2, 3C-1, 3C-2, 3D-1and 3D-2 depict the heavy and light chain variable region sequences of hybridoma clones that bind to apical and non-apical regions of TfR. The sequences can be further subdivided by epitope and sequence similarity into class I-III (apical binders) and class IV (non-apical binders). The HVRs according to Kabat are indicated by underlining.

[0046] Figures 4A-1, 4A-2, 4B-1, 4B-2, 4C-1, 4C-2, 4D-1 and 4D-2depict alignments of humanized sequences for (A) 15G11, (B) 7A4/8A2, (C) 7G7 and (D) 16F6. Each mouse light or heavy variable domain sequence (second line) is aligned to the closest human germline or consensus variable domain (first line). The humanized version for each antibody is shown at the bottom (third line). Differences from the human germline or consensus sequences are shaded. HVR sequences that were grafted into the human framework are boxed. CDR definitions according to Kabat are indicated.

[0047] Figure 4E-1 and 4E-2 show that for the class I-III groups of antibodies, variant forms of the antibodies with modifications at one or more residues of an FR retained affinity and binding specifity.

[0048] Figure 5 depicts the binding of hu7A4.v15, hu15G11.v5 and hu7G7.v1 to huTfR in the presence of 6.3 μM holo-Tf. Antibody binding to immobilized huTfR is shown in the presence (open sybols and dashed lines) or absence (filled symbols and solid lines) of 6.3 μM holo-Tf.

[0049] Figures 6A-B depict the results of the HFE – HuTfR binding and the HFE blocking assays described in Example 1. Figure 6A shows the binding of antibody to increasing concentrations of huTfR captured via immobilized HFE. Figure 6B shows the binding of huTfR to immobilized HFE in the presence of increasing concentrations of antibody.

[0050] Figure 7A-B depict binding analyses of 15G11.v5 and 7A4.v5 IgG and Fab Ala variants on cyno and human TfR, demonstrating the effects on affinity of Ala mutations in CDR-L3 and CDR-H3 of each antibody assessed as IgG by ELISA binding and IgG or Fab by SPR analysis to immobilized human or cyno TfR, as described in Example 2.

[0051] Figures 8A-B and Figures 9A-B depict the results of experiments assessing the impact of effector function status on ADCC activity of anti-human TfR ("anti-hTFR") antibodies in primary human bone marrow mononuclear cells or in a human erythroblast cell line, as described in Example 4.

[0052] Figure 10 depicts the dosing and sampling scheme for the primate study described in Example 5.

[0053] Figures 11A-11B depict the pharmacokinetic results of the experiments described in Example 5, specifically individual and group mean anti-TfR^1/BACE1, anti-TfR^2/BACE1 and anti-gD serum concentrations versus time following a single IV bolus administration at 30 mg/kg in cynomolgus monkeys in serum (Figure 11A) and CSF (Figure 11B).

[0054] Figures 12A-12E depict the pharmacodynamic results of the experiments described in Example 5, specifically individual and group mean anti-TfR^1/BACE1, anti-TfR^2/BACE1 and anti-gD plasma (A) or CSF (B-E) concentrations versus time following a single IV bolus administration at 30 mg/kg in cynomolgus monkeys. The upper panels show Abeta1-40 levels in plasma (Figure 12A) and CSF (Figure 12B), while the lower panels show soluble APPα levels (Figure 12C), soluble APPβ levels (Figure 12D), and sAPPβ/sAPPα ratio (Figure 12E) over time.

[0055] Figures 13A-13D depict the results of hematological sampling performed during the studies described in Example 5. At each of the indicated time points, total reticulocytes (Figure 13A), red blood cells (Figure 13B), hemoglobin (Figure 13D) and the percentage of immature reticulocytes in the total reticulocyte pool (Figure 13C) were measured using standard techniques.

[0056] Figure 14 depicts the dosing and sampling scheme for the primate study described in Example 6.

[0057] Figures 15A-15B depict the pharmacodynamic results (A) and brain antibody concentrations (B) of the experiments described in Example 6. Specifically, Figure 15A shows individual and group mean anti-TfR^1/BACE1, anti-TfR^2/BACE1, anti-gD, and anti-BACE1 ration of sAPPβ/sAPPα in CSF versus time following a single IV bolus administration at 30 mg/kg in cynomolgus monkeys. Figure 15B show individual anti-TfR^1/BACE1, anti-TfR^2/BACE1, anti-gD, and anti-BACE1 concentrations of antibody in various brain regions at 24 hours post-dose.

[0058] Figures 16A-B depict the light and heavy chain amino acid sequences of anti-BACE1 clone YW412.8 obtained from a naïve sort of the natural diversity phage display library and affinity-matured forms of YW412.8. Fig. 16A depicts the variable light (VL) sequence alignments (SEQ ID NOs. 132-137). Fig. 16B depicts the variable heavy (VH) sequence alignments (SEQ ID Nos. 138-139). In both figures, the HVR sequences for each clone are indicated by the boxed regions, with the first box indicating HVR-L1 (Fig. 16A) or HVR-H1 (Fig. 16B), the second box indicating HVR-L2 (Fig. 16A) or HVR-H2 (Fig. 16B), and the third box indicating HVR-L3 (Fig. 16A) or HVR-H3 (Fig. 16B).

[0059] Figures 17A-B depict the light and heavy chain amino acid sequences of anti-BACE1 antibody clone Fab 12 obtained from a naïve sort of a synthetic diversity phage display library and affinity-matured forms of Fab 12. Fig. 17A depicts the light chain sequence alignments (SEQ ID NOs. 140-143). Fig. 17B depicts the heavy chain sequence alignments (SEQ ID NO. 144). In both figures, the HVR sequences for each clone are indicated by the boxed regions, with the first box

indicating HVR-L1 (Fig. 17A) or HVR-H1 (Fig. 17B), the second box indicating HVR-L2 (Fig. 17A) or HVR-H2 (Fig. 17B), and the third box indicating HVR-L3 (Fig. 17A) or HVR-H3 (Fig. 17B).

[0060] Figures 18A-B depict the heavy chain (Fig. 18A; SEQ ID NO. 145) and light chain (Fig. 18B; SEQ ID NO. 146) of an exemplary anti-Abeta antibody.

[0061] Figure 19 depicts the pharmacokinetic properties of Anti-TfR^{1}/BACE1, Anti-Tfr^{52A}/BACE1 and Anti-TfR^{53A}/BACE1 as described in Example 5.

[0062] Figure 20 depicts the pharmacokinetic properties of the murine IgG2a Anti-TfR^{D}/BACE1 and Anti-gD antibodies with the Fc effector function LALAPG mutations as described in Example 7.

[0063] Figure 21 depicts the total and immature reticulocyte count in mice 24 hours after administration of a 50mg/kg dose of the murine IgG2a Anti-TfR^{D}/BACE1 and Anti-gD antibodies with the Fc effector function LALAPG mutations as described in Example 7.

[0064] Figure 22 depicts the total reticulocyte count in mice 24 hours after administration of a 50mg/kg dose of the anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 (N297G), anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 (LALAPG), anti-TfR^{52}A/BACE1 (LALAPG/YTE), TfR^{52}A/BACE1 (LALAPG/AI) antibodies in human transferrin receptor knock-in mice as described in Example 8.

[0065] Figure 23 depicts the results of experiments assessing the impact of effector function status on ADCC activity of anti-TfR/gD, anti-TfR/BACE1 (N297G), anti-TfR/BACE1 (LALAPG), anti-TfR/BACE1 (N297G/434A/436I) and anti-TfR/BACE1 (LALAPG/YTE) antibodies in primary human bone marrow mononuclear cells or in a human erythroblast cell line, as described in Example 8.

[0066] Figure 24 depicts the heavy and light chain variable region sequences of 1511Gv.5 (light chain - SEQ ID NO: 152 and heavy chain – SEQ ID NO: 108) and affinity variants 15G11.52A (light chain – SEQ ID NO:152 and heavy chain – SEQ ID NO: 153), 15G11.53A (light chain – SEQ ID NO: 152 and heavy chain – SEQ ID NO: 154) and 15G11.92A (light chain – SEQ ID NO: 151 and heavy chain – SEQ ID NO: 108). The HVRs according to Kabat are indicated by underlining.

[0067] Figure 25 depicts a competition assay between 15G11v.5 and anti-TfR^{C12}as described in Example 1.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF EMBODIMENTS OF THE INVENTION

1. DEFINITIONS

[0068] "Affinity" refers to the strength of the sum total of noncovalent interactions between a single binding site of a molecule (e.g., and antibody) and its binding partner (e.g., an antigen).

Unless indicted otherwise, as used herein, "binding affinity" refers to intrinsic binding affinity which reflects a 1:1 interaction between members of a binding pair (e.g., antibody and antigen). The affinity of a molecule X for its partner Y can generally be represented by the dissociation constant (KD, which is a ratio of the off-rate of X from Y (kd or Koff) to the on-rate of X to Y (ka or kon)). A surrogate measurement for the affinity of one or more antibodies for its target is its half maximal inhibitory concentration (IC50), a measure of how much of the antibody is needed to inhibit the binding of a known ligand to the antibody target by 50%. Affinity can be measured by common methods known in the art, including those described herein. Specific illustrative and exemplary embodiments for measuring binding affinity are described herein. The "blood-brain barrier" or "BBB" refers to the physiological barrier between the peripheral circulation and the brain and spinal cord (i.e., the CNS) which is formed by tight junctions within the brain capillary endothelial plasma membranes, creating a tight barrier that restricts the transport of molecules into the brain, even very small molecules such as urea (60 Daltons). The blood-brain barrier within the brain, the blood-spinal cord barrier within the spinal cord, and the blood-retinal barrier within the retina are contiguous capillary barriers within the CNS, and are herein collectively referred to a the blood-brain barrier or BBB. The BBB also encompasses the blood-CSF barrier (choroid plexus) where the barrier is comprised of ependymal cells rather than capillary endothelial cells.

[0069] The terms "amyloid beta," "beta-amyloid," "Abeta," "amyloidβ," and "Aβ", used interchangeably herein, refer to the fragment of amyloid precursor protein ("APP") that is produced upon β-secretase 1 ("BACE1") cleavage of APP, as well as modifications, fragments and any functional equivalents thereof, including, but not limited to, $A\beta_{1-40}$, and $A\beta_{1-42}$. Aβ is known to exist in monomeric form, as well as to associate to form oligomers and fibril structures, which may be found as constituent members of amyloid plaque. The structure and sequences of such Aβ peptides are well known to one of ordinary skill in the art and methods of producing said peptides or of extracting them from brain and other tissues are described, for example, in Glenner and Wong, Biochem Biophys Res. Comm. 129: 885-890 (1984). Moreover, Aβ peptides are also commercially available in various forms.

[0070] "Anti-Abeta immunoglobulin," "anti-Abeta antibody," and "antibody that binds Abeta" are used interchangeably herein, and refer to an antibody that specifically binds to human Abeta. A nonlimiting example of an anti-Abeta antibody is crenezumab. Other non-limiting examples of anti-Abeta antibodies are solanezumab, bapineuzumab, gantenerumab, aducanumab, ponezumab and any anti-Abeta antibodies disclosed in the following publications: WO2000162801 , WO2002046237, WO2002003911, WO2003016466, WO2003016467, WO2003077858, WO2004029629, WO2004032868, WO2004032868, WO2004108895, WO2005028511,

WO2006039470, WO2006036291, WO2006066089, WO2006066171, WO2006066049, WO2006095041, WO2009027105.

[0071] The terms "crenezumab" and "MABT5102A" are used interchangeably herein, and refer to a specific anti-Abeta antibody that binds to monomeric, oligomeric, and fibril forms of Abeta, and which is associated with CAS registry number 1095207. In some embodiments, such antibody comprises sequences set forth in Figures 18A and 18B.

[0072] "Apolipoprotein E4 carrier" or "ApoE4 carrier," used interchangeably herein with "apolipoprotein E4 positive" or "ApoE4 positive," refers to an individual having at least one apolipoprotein E4 (or "ApoE4") allele. An individual with zero ApoE4 alleles is referred to herein as being "ApoE4 negative" or an "ApoE4 non-carrier." *See also* Prekumar, *et al.*, 1996, *Am. J Pathol.* 148:2083–95.

[0073] The term "cerebral vasogenic edema" refers to an excess accumulation of intravascular fluid or protein in the intracellular or extracellular spaces of the brain. Cerebral vasogenic edema is detectable by, e.g., brain MRI, including, but not limited to FLAIR MRI, and can be asymptomatic ("asymptomatic vasogenic edema") or associated with neurological symptoms, such as confusion, dizziness, vomiting, and lethargy ("symptomatic vasogenic edema") (*see Sperling et al. Alzheimer's & Dementia*, 7:367, 2011).

[0074] The term "cerebral macrohemorrhage" refers to an intracranial hemorrhage, or bleeding in the brain, of an area that is more than about 1 cm in diameter. Cerebral macrohemorrhage is detectable by, e.g., brain MRI, including but not limited to T2*-weighted GRE MRI, and can be asymptomatic ("asymptomatic macrohemorrhage") or associated with symptoms such as transient or permanent focal motor or sensory impairment, ataxia, aphasia, and dysarthria ("symptomatic macrohemorrhage") (*see, e.g.*, Chalela JA, Gomes *J. Expert Rev. Neurother.* 2004 4:267, 2004 and Sperling *et al. Alzheimer's & Dementia*, 7:367, 2011).

[0075] The term "cerebral microhemorrhage" refers to an intracranial hemorrhage, or bleeding in the brain, of an area that is less than about 1 cm in diameter. Cerebral microhemorrhage is detectable by, e.g., brain MRI, including, but not limited to T2*-weighted GRE MRI, and can be asymptomatic ("asymptomatic microhemorrhage") or can potentially be associated with symptoms such as transient or permanent focal motor or sensory impairment, ataxia, aphasia, and dysarthria ("symptomatic microhemorrhage"). *See, e.g.*, Greenberg, *et al.*, 2009, *Lancet Neurol.* 8:165–74.

[0076] The term "sulcal effusion" refers to an effusion of fluid in the furrows, or sulci, of the brain. Sulcal effusions are detectable by, e.g., brain MRI, including but not limited to FLAIR MRI. See Sperling *et al. Alzheimer's & Dementia*, 7:367, 2011.

[0077] The term "superficial siderosis of the central nervous system" refers to bleeding or hemorrhage into the subarachnoid space of the brain and is detectable by, e.g., brain MRI,

including but not limited to T2*-weighted GRE MRI. Symptoms indicative of superficial siderosis of the central nervous system include sensorineural deafness, cerebellar ataxia, and pyramidal signs. *See* Kumara-N, *Am J Neuroradiol.* 31:5, 2010.

[0078] The term "amyloidosis," as used herein, refers to a group of diseases and disorders caused by or associated with amyloid or amyloid-like proteins and includes, but is not limited to, diseases and disorders caused by the presence or activity of amyloid-like proteins in monomeric, fibril, or polymeric state, or any combination of the three, including by amyloid plaques. Such diseases include, but are not limited to, secondary amyloidosis and age-related amyloidosis, such as diseases including, but not limited to, neurological disorders such as Alzheimer's Disease ("AD"), diseases or conditions characterized by a loss of cognitive memory capacity such as, for example, mild cognitive impairment (MCI), Lewy body dementia, Down's syndrome, hereditary cerebral hemorrhage with amyloidosis (Dutch type), the Guam Parkinson-Demential complex and other diseases which are based on or associated with amyloid-like proteins such as progressive supranuclear palsy, multiple sclerosis, Creutzfeld Jacob disease, Parkinson's disease, HIV-related dementia, ALS (amyotropic lateral sclerosis), inclusion-body myositis (IBM), adult onset diabetes, endocrine tumor and senile cardiac amyloidosis, and various eye diseases including macular degeneration, drusen-related optic neuropathy, glaucoma, and cataract due to beta-amyloid deposition.

[0079] Glaucoma is a group of diseases of the optic nerve involving loss of retinal ganglion cells (RGCs) in a characteristic pattern of optic neuropathy. RGCs are the nerve cells that transmit visual signals from the eye to the brain. Caspase-3 and Caspase-8, two major enzymes in the apoptotic process, are activated in the process leading to apoptosis of RGCs. Caspase-3 cleaves amyloid precursor protein (APP) to produce neurotoxic fragments, including Abeta. Without the protective effect of APP, Abeta accumulation in the retinal ganglion cell layer results in the death of RGCs and irreversible loss of vision.

[0080] Glaucoma is often, but not always, accompanied by an increased eye pressure, which may be a result of blockage of the circulation of aqueous, or its drainage. Although raised intraocular pressure is a significant risk factor for developing glaucoma, no threshold of intraocular pressure can be defined which would be determinative for causing glaucoma. The damage may also be caused by poor blood supply to the vital optic nerve fibers, a weakness in the structure of the nerve, and/or a problem in the health of the nerve fibers themselves. Untreated glaucoma leads to permanent damage of the optic nerve and resultant visual field loss, which can progress to blindness.

[0081] The term "mild Alzheimer's Disease" or "mild AD" as used herein (*e.g.*, a "patient diagnosed with mild AD") refers to a stage of AD characterized by an MMSE score of 20 to 26.

The term "mild to moderate Alzheimer's Disease" or "mild to moderate AD" as used herein encompasses both mild and moderate AD, and is characterized by an MMSE score of 18 to 26.

[0082] The term "moderate Alzheimer's Disease" or "moderate AD" as used herein (*e.g.*, a "patient diagnosed with moderate AD") refers to a stage of AD characterized by an MMSE score of 18 to 19.

[0083] The "central nervous system" or "CNS" refers to the complex of nerve tissues that control bodily function, and includes the brain and spinal cord.

[0084] A "blood-brain barrier receptor" (abbreviated "BBB-R" herein) is a transmembrane receptor protein expressed on brain endothelial cells which is capable of transporting molecules across the blood-brain barrier. Examples of BBB-R include, but are not limited to: transferrin receptor (TfR), insulin receptor, insulin-like growth factor receptor (IGF-R), low density lipoprotein receptors including without limitation low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein 1 (LRP1) and low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein 8 (LRP8), glucose transporter 1 (Glut1) and heparin-binding epidermal growth factor-like growth factor (HB-EGF). An exemplary BBB-R herein is transferrin receptor (TfR).

[0085] The term "transferrin receptor" or "TfR", as used herein, refers to any native TfR from any vertebrate source, including mammals such as primates (e.g., humans) and rodents (e.g., mice and rats), unless otherwise indicated. The term encompasses "full-length," unprocessed TfR as well as any form of TfR that results from processing in the cell. The term also encompasses naturally occurring variants of TfR, e.g., splice variants or allelic variants. TfR is a transmembrane glycoprotein (with a molecular weight of about 180,000) composed of two disulphide-bonded sub-units (each of apparent molecular weight of about 90,000) involved in iron uptake in vertebrates. In some embodiments, the TfR herein is human TfR ("hTfR") comprising the amino acid sequence as set forth in Schneider et al. *Nature* 311: 675 - 678 (1984), for example (SEQ ID NO: 1). In another embodiment, the TfR herein is primate TfR ("pTfR") comprising the amino acid sequence as set forth in Genbank reference AFD18260.1 (SEQ ID NO: 2). For comparison, the mouse TfR sequence may be found in Genbank reference AAH54522.1 (SEQ ID NO: 3).

[0086] A "neurological disorder" as used herein refers to a disease or disorder which affects the CNS and/or which has an etiology in the CNS. Exemplary CNS diseases or disorders include, but are not limited to, neuropathy, amyloidosis, cancer, an ocular disease or disorder, viral or microbial infection, inflammation, ischemia, neurodegenerative disease, seizure, behavioral disorders, and a lysosomal storage disease. For the purposes of this application, the CNS will be understood to include the eye, which is normally sequestered from the rest of the body by the blood-retina barrier. Specific examples of neurological disorders include, but are not limited to, neurodegenerative diseases (including, but not limited to, Lewy body disease, postpoliomyelitis

syndrome, Shy-Draeger syndrome, olivopontocerebellar atrophy, Parkinson's disease, multiple system atrophy, striatonigral degeneration, tauopathies (including, but not limited to, Alzheimer disease and supranuclear palsy), prion diseases (including, but not limited to, bovine spongiform encephalopathy, scrapie, Creutzfeldt-Jakob syndrome, kuru, Gerstmann-Straussler-Scheinker disease, chronic wasting disease, and fatal familial insomnia), bulbar palsy, motor neuron disease, and nervous system heterodegenerative disorders (including, but not limited to, Canavan disease, Huntington's disease, neuronal ceroid-lipofuscinosis, Alexander's disease, Tourette's syndrome, Menkes kinky hair syndrome, Cockayne syndrome, Halervorden-Spatz syndrome, lafora disease, Rett syndrome, hepatolenticular degeneration, Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, and Unverricht-Lundborg syndrome), dementia (including, but not limited to, Pick's disease, and spinocerebellar ataxia), cancer (e.g. of the CNS, including brain metastases resulting from cancer elsewhere in the body).

[0087] A "neurological disorder drug" is a drug or therapeutic agent that treats one or more neurological disorder(s). Neurological disorder drugs of the invention include, but are not limited to, antibodies, peptides, proteins, natural ligands of one or more CNS target(s), modified versions of natural ligands of one or more CNS target(s), aptamers, inhibitory nucleic acids (i.e., small inhibitory RNAs (siRNA) and short hairpin RNAs (shRNA)), ribozymes, and small molecules, or active fragments of any of the foregoing. Exemplary neurological disorder drugs of the invention are described herein and include, but are not limited to: antibodies, aptamers, proteins, peptides, inhibitory nucleic acids and small molecules and active fragments of any of the foregoing that either are themselves or specifically recognize and/or act upon (i.e., inhibit, activate, or detect) a CNS antigen or target molecule such as, but not limited to, amyloid precursor protein or portions thereof, amyloid beta, beta-secretase, gamma-secretase, tau, alpha-synuclein, parkin, huntingtin, DR6, presenilin, ApoE, glioma or other CNS cancer markers, and neurotrophins. Non-limiting examples of neurological disorder drugs and the disorders they may be used to treat are provided in the following Table 1:

TABLE 1: Non-limiting examples of neurological disorder drugs and the corresponding disorders they may be used to treat

Drug	**Neurological disorder**
Anti-BACE1 Antibody	Alzheimer's, acute and chronic brain injury, stroke
Anti-Abeta Antibody	Alzheimer's disease
Anti-Tau Antibody	Alzheimer's disease, tauopathies
Neurotrophin	Stroke, acute brain injury, spinal cord injury
Brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF),	Chronic brain injury (Neurogenesis)

Fibroblast growth factor 2 (FGF-2)	
Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor (EGFR)-antibody	Brain cancer
Glial cell-line derived neural factor (GDNF)	Parkinson's disease
Brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF)	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, depression
Lysosomal enzyme	Lysosomal storage disorders of the brain
Ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF)	Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
Neuregulin-1	Schizophrenia
Anti-HER2 antibody (e.g. trastuzumab, pertuzumab, etc.)	Brain metastasis from HER2-positive cancer
Anti-VEGF antibody (e.g., bevacizumab)	Recurrent or newly diagnosed glioblastoma, recurrent malignant glioma, brain metastasis

[0088] An "imaging agent" is a compound that has one or more properties that permit its presence and/or location to be detected directly or indirectly. Examples of such imaging agents include proteins and small molecule compounds incorporating a labeled moiety that permits detection.

[0089] A "CNS antigen" or "brain antigen" is an antigen expressed in the CNS, including the brain, which can be targeted with an antibody or small molecule. Examples of such antigens include, without limitation: beta-secretase 1 (BACE1), amyloid beta (Abeta), epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), tau, apolipoprotein E4 (ApoE4), alpha-synuclein, CD20, huntingtin, prion protein (PrP), leucine rich repeat kinase 2 (LRRK2), parkin, presenilin 1, presenilin 2, gamma secretase, death receptor 6 (DR6), amyloid precursor protein (APP), p75 neurotrophin receptor (p75NTR), interleukin 6 receptor (IL6R), TNF receptor 1 (TNFR1), interleukin 1 beta (IL1β), and caspase 6. In some embodiments, the antigen is BACE1.

[0090] The term "BACE1," as used herein, refers to any native beta-secretase 1 (also called β-site amyloid precursor protein cleaving enzyme 1, membrane-associated aspartic protease 2, memapsin 2, aspartyl protease 2 or Asp2) from any vertebrate source, including mammals such as primates (*e.g.* humans) and rodents (*e.g.*, mice and rats), unless otherwise indicated. The term encompasses "full-length," unprocessed BACE1 as well as any form of BACE1 which results from processing in the cell. The term also encompasses naturally occurring variants of BACE1, *e.g.*, splice variants or allelic variants. The amino acid sequence of an exemplary BACE1 polypeptide is the sequence for human BACE1, isoform A as reported in Vassar *et al.*, *Science* 286:735-741 (1999), which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Several other isoforms of human BACE1 exist including isoforms B, C and D. *See* UniProtKB/Swiss-Prot Entry P56817, which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

[0091] The terms "anti-beta-secretase antibody", "anti-BACE1 antibody", "an antibody that binds to beta-secretase" and "an antibody that binds to BACE1" refer to an antibody that is capable of binding BACE1 with sufficient affinity such that the antibody is useful as a diagnostic and/or therapeutic agent in targeting BACE1. In some embodiments, the extent of binding of an anti-BACE1 antibody to an unrelated, non-BACE1 protein is less than about 10% of the binding of the antibody to BACE1 as measured, e.g., by a radioimmunoassay (RIA). In certain embodiments, an antibody that binds to BACE1 has a dissociation constant (Kd) of $\leq$ 1μM, $\leq$ 100 nM, $\leq$ 10 nM, $\leq$ 1 nM, $\leq$ 0.1 nM, $\leq$ 0.01 nM, or $\leq$ 0.001 nM (e.g. 10^{-8} M or less, e.g. from 10^{-8} M to 10^{-13} M, e.g., from 10^{-9} M to 10^{-13} M). In certain embodiments, an anti-BACE1 antibody binds to an epitope of BACE1 that is conserved among BACE1 from different species and isoforms. In some embodiments, an antibody is provided that binds to the epitope on BACE1 bound by anti-BACE1 antibody YW412.8.31. In other embodiments, an antibody is provided that binds to an exosite within BACE1 located in the catalytic domain of BACE1. In some embodiments an antibody is provided that competes with the peptides identified in Kornacker *et al.*, *Biochem.* 44:11567-11573 (2005), which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, (*i.e.*, Peptides 1, 2, 3, 1-11, 1-10, 1-9, 1-8, 1-7, 1-6, 2-12, 3-12, 4-12, 5-12, 6-12, 7-12, 8-12, 9-12, 10-12, 4, 5, 6, 5-10, 5-9, scrambled, Y5A, P6A, Y7A, F8A, I9A, P10A and L11A) for binding to BACE1. Exemplary BACE1 antibody sequences are depicted in Fig. 15A-B and Fig. 16A-B. One exemplary antibody herein comprises the variable domains of the antibody YW412.8.31 (e.g. as in Figs. 15A-B).

[0092] A "native sequence" protein herein refers to a protein comprising the amino acid sequence of a protein found in nature, including naturally occurring variants of the protein. The term as used herein includes the protein as isolated from a natural source thereof or as recombinantly produced.

[0093] The term "antibody" herein is used in the broadest sense and encompasses various antibody stuctures, including but not limited to monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, multispecific antibodies (*e.g.* bispecific antibodies), and antibody fragments so long as they exhibit the desired antigen-binding activity.

[0094] An "antibody fragment" refers to a molecule other than an intact antibody that comprises a portion of an intact antibody that binds the antigen to which the intact antibody binds. Examples of antibody fragments are well known in the art (see, e.g., Nelson, MAbs (2010) 2(1): 77-83) and include but are not limited to Fab, Fab', Fab'-SH, $F(ab')_2$, and Fv; diabodies; linear antibodies; single-chain antibody molecules including but not limited to single-chain variable fragments (scFv), fusions of light and/or heavy-chain antigen-binding domains with or without a linker (and optionally in tandem); and monospecific or multispecific antigen-binding molecules

formed from antibody fragments (including, but not limited to multispecific antibodies constructed from multiple variable domains which lack Fc regions).

[0095] The term "monoclonal antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, *i.e.*, the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical and/or bind the same epitope, except for possible variants, e.g., containing naturally occurring mutations or that may arise during production of the monoclonal antibody, such variants generally being present in minor amounts. In contrast to polyclonal antibody preparations, which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody of a monoclonal antibody preparation is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by a variety of techniques, including but not limited to the hybridoma method (see, e.g., Kohler *et al., Nature*, 256:495 (1975)), recombinant DNA methods (see, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567), phage-display methods (e.g., using the techniques described in Clackson *et al., Nature,* 352:624-628 (1991) and Marks *et al., J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581-597 (1991)), and methods utilizing transgenic animals containing all or part of the human immunoglobulin loci, such methods and other exemplary methods for making monoclonal antibodies being described herein. Specific examples of monoclonal antibodies herein include chimeric antibodies, humanized antibodies, and human antibodies, including antigen-binding fragments thereof.

[0096] The monoclonal antibodies herein specifically include "chimeric" antibodies (immunoglobulins) in which a portion of the heavy and/or light chain is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from a particular species or belonging to a particular antibody class or subclass, while the remainder of the chain(s) is identical with or homologous to corresponding sequences in antibodies derived from another species or belonging to another antibody class or subclass, as well as fragments of such antibodies, so long as they exhibit the desired biological activity (U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567; Morrison *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:6851-6855 (1984)).

[0097] An "acceptor human framework" for the purposes herein is a framework comprising the amino acid sequence of a light chain variable domain (VL) framework or a heavy chain variable domain (VH) framework derived from a human immunoglobulin framework or a human consensus framework, as defined below. An acceptor human framework "derived from" a human immunoglobulin framework or a human consensus framework may comprise the same amino acid sequence thereof, or it may contain amino acid sequence changes. In some embodiments, the

number of amino acid changes are 10 or less, 9 or less, 8 or less, 7 or less, 6 or less, 5 or less, 4 or less, 3 or less, or 2 or less. In some embodiments, the VL acceptor human framework is identical in sequence to the VL human immunoglobulin framework sequence or human consensus framework sequence.

[0098] A "human consensus framework" is a framework which represents the most commonly occurring amino acid residues in a selection of human immunoglobulin VL or VH framework sequences. Generally, the selection of human immunoglobulin VL or VH sequences is from a subgroup of variable domain sequences. Generally, the subgroup of sequences is a subgroup as in Kabat et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, Fifth Edition, NIH Publication 91-3242, Bethesda MD (1991), vols. 1-3. In some embodiments, for the VL, the subgroup is subgroup kappa I as in Kabat et al., *supra.* In some embodiments, for the VH, the subgroup is subgroup III as in Kabat et al., *supra*.

[0099] "Humanized" forms of non-human (*e.g.,* murine) antibodies are chimeric antibodies that contain minimal sequence derived from non-human antibodies. For the most part, humanized antibodies are human antibodies (recipient antibody) in which residues from a hypervariable region of the recipient are replaced by residues from a hypervariable region of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat, rabbit or nonhuman primate having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. For example, in certain embodiments, a humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the HVRs (e.g., CDRs) correspond to those of a non-human antibody, and all or substantially all of the framework regions (FRs) correspond to those of a human antibody. In some instances, FR residues of the human immunoglobulin are replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, humanized antibodies may comprise residues that are not found in the recipient antibody or in the donor antibody. These modifications are made to further refine antibody performance. In certain embodiments, a humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of the hypervariable regions correspond to those of a non-human antibody and all or substantially all of the FRs are those of a human antibody, except for FR substitution(s) as noted above. The humanized antibody optionally also will comprise at least a portion of an antibody constant region, typically that of a human antibody. A "humanized form" of an antibody, e.g., a non-human antibody, refers to an antibody that has undergone humanization. For further details, see Jones *et al., Nature* 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann *et al., Nature* 332:323-329 (1988); and Presta, *Curr. Op. Struct. Biol.* 2:593-596 (1992).

[00100] A "human antibody" herein is an antibody comprising an amino acid sequence structure that corresponds with the amino acid sequence structure of an antibody produced by a

human or a human cell or derived from a non-human source that utilizes human antibody repertoires or other human antibody-encoding sequences. This definition of a human antibody specifically excludes a humanized antibody comprising non-human antigen-binding residues. Such antibodies can be identified or made by a variety of techniques, including, but not limited to: production by transgenic animals (*e.g.*, mice) that are capable, upon immunization, of producing human antibodies in the absence of endogenous immunoglobulin production (see, *e.g.*, Jakobovits *et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits *et al., Nature*, 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggermann *et al., Year in Immuno.*, 7:33 (1993); and US Patent Nos. 5,591,669, 5,589,369 and 5,545,807)); selection from phage display libraries expressing human antibodies or human antibody fragments (see, for example, McCafferty *et al.*, *Nature* 348:552-553 (1990); Johnson *et al.*, *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 3:564-571 (1993); Clackson *et al.*, *Nature*, 352:624-628 (1991); Marks *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 222:581-597 (1991); Griffith *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 12:725-734 (1993);US Patent Nos. 5,565,332 and 5,573,905); generation via *in vitro* activated B cells (see US Patents 5,567,610 and 5,229,275); and isolation from human antibody-producing hybridomas.

[00101] A "multispecific antibody" herein is an antibody having binding specificities for at least two different epitopes. Exemplary multispecific antibodies may bind both a TfR and a brain antigen. Multispecific antibodies can be prepared as full-length antibodies or antibody fragments (*e.g.* $F(ab')_2$ bispecific antibodies). Engineered antibodies with two, three or more (e.g. four) functional antigen binding sites are also contemplated (see, e.g., US Appln No. US 2002/0004587 A1, Miller *et al.*). Multispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or as antibody fragments.

[00102] Antibodies herein include "amino acid sequence variants" with altered antigen-binding or biological activity. Examples of such amino acid alterations include antibodies with enhanced affinity for antigen (e.g. "affinity matured" antibodies), and antibodies with altered Fc region, if present, e.g. with altered (increased or diminished) antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and/or complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC) (see, for example, WO 00/42072, Presta, L. and WO 99/51642, Iduosogie et al.); and/or increased or diminished serum half-life (see, for example, WO00/42072, Presta, L.).

[00103] An "affinity modified variant" has one or more substituted hypervariable region or framework residues of a parent antibody (*e.g.* of a parent chimeric, humanized, or human antibody) that alter (increase or reduce) affinity. A convenient way for generating such substitutional variants uses phage display. Briefly, several hypervariable region sites (*e.g.* 6-7 sites) are mutated to generate all possible amino substitutions at each site. The antibody variants thus generated are displayed in a monovalent fashion from filamentous phage particles as fusions to the gene III product of M13 packaged within each particle. The phage-displayed variants are then screened for

their biological activity (*e.g.* binding affinity). In order to identify candidate hypervariable region sites for modification, alanine scanning mutagenesis can be performed to identify hypervariable region residues contributing significantly to antigen binding. Alternatively, or additionally, it may be beneficial to analyze a crystal structure of the antigen-antibody complex to identify contact points between the antibody and its target. Such contact residues and neighboring residues are candidates for substitution according to the techniques elaborated herein. Once such variants are generated, the panel of variants is subjected to screening and antibodies with altered affinity may be selected for further development.

[00104] A "pH-sensitive antibody variant" is an antibody variant which has a different binding binding affinity for a target antigen at a first pH than it does for that target antigen at a different pH. As a nonlimiting example, an anti-TfR antibody of the invention may be selected for or engineered to have pH-sensitive binding to TfR such that it binds with desirably low affinity (as described herein) to cell surface TfR in the plasma at pH 7.4, but upon internalization into an endosomal compartment, rapidly dissociates from TfR at the relatively lower pH (pH 5.5-6.0); such dissociation may protect the antibody from antigen-mediated clearance, and increase the amount of antibody that is either delivered to the CNS or recycled back across the BBB – in either case, the effective concentration of the antibody is increased relative to an anti-TfR antibody that does not comprise such pH sensitivity (see, e.g., Chaparro-Riggers et al. J. Biol. Chem. 287(14): 11090-11097; Igawa et al., Nature Biotechnol. 28(11): 1203-1208). The desired combination of affinities at the serum pH and the endosomal compartment pH can be readily determined for a TfR and conjugated compound by one of ordinary skill in the art.

[00105] The antibody herein may be conjugated with a "heterologous molecule" for example to increase half-life or stability or otherwise improve the antibody. For example, the antibody may be linked to one of a variety of non-proteinaceous polymers, *e.g.*, polyethylene glycol (PEG), polypropylene glycol, polyoxyalkylenes, or copolymers of polyethylene glycol and polypropylene glycol. Antibody fragments, such as Fab', linked to one or more PEG molecules are an exemplary embodiment of the invention. In another example, the heterologous molecule is a therapeutic compound or a visualization agent (ie., a detectable label), and the antibody is being used to transport such heterologous molecule across the BBB. Examples of heterologous molecules include, but are not limited to, a chemical compound, a peptide, a polymer, a lipid, a nucleic acid, and a protein.

[00106] The antibody herein may be a "glycosylation variant" such that any carbohydrate attached to the Fc region, if present, is altered, either modified in presence/absence, or modified in type. For example, antibodies with a mature carbohydrate structure that lacks fucose attached to an Fc region of the antibody are described in US Pat Appl No US 2003/0157108 (Presta, L.). See also

US 2004/0093621 (Kyowa Hakko Kogyo Co., Ltd). Antibodies with a bisecting N-acetylglucosamine (GlcNAc) in the carbohydrate attached to an Fc region of the antibody are referenced in WO 2003/011878, Jean-Mairet *et al.* and US Patent No. 6,602,684, Umana *et al.* Antibodies with at least one galactose residue in the oligosaccharide attached to an Fc region of the antibody are reported in WO 1997/30087, Patel *et al.* See, also, WO 1998/58964 (Raju, S.) and WO 1999/22764 (Raju, S.) concerning antibodies with altered carbohydrate attached to the Fc region thereof. See also US 2005/0123546 (Umana *et al.*) describing antibodies with modified glycosylation. Mutation of the consensus glycosylation sequence in the Fc region (Asn-X-Ser/Thr at positions 297-299, where X cannot be proline), for example by mutating the Asn of this sequence to any other amino acid, by placing a Pro at position 298, or by modifying position 299 to any amino acid other than Ser or Thr should abrogate glycosylation at that position (see, e.g., Fares Al-Ejeh et al., Clin. Cancer Res. (2007) 13:5519s-5527s; Imperiali and Shannon, Biochemistry (1991) 30(18): 4374-4380; Katsuri, Biochem J. (1997) 323(Pt 2): 415-419; Shakin-Eshleman et al., J. Biol. Chem. (1996) 271: 6363-6366).

[00107] The term "hypervariable region" or "HVR" as used herein refers to each of the regions of an antibody variable domain which are hypervariable in sequence ("complementarity determining regions" or "CDRs") and/or form structurally defined loops ("hypervariable loops") and/or contain the antigen-contacting residues ("antigen contact"). Generally, antibodies comprise six HVRs: three in the VH (H1, H2, H3), and three in the VL (L1, L2, L3). Exemplary HVRs herein include:

(a) hypervariable loops occurring at amino acid residues 26-32 (L1), 50-52 (L2), 91-96 (L3), 26-32 (H1), 53-55 (H2), and 96-101 (H3) (Chothia and Lesk, *J. Mol. Biol.* 196:901-917 (1987));

(b) CDRs occurring at amino acid residues 24-34 (L1), 50-56 (L2), 89-97 (L3), 31-35b (H1), 50-65 (H2), and 95-102 (H3) (Kabat et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD (1991));

(c) antigen contacts occurring at amino acid residues 27c-36 (L1), 46-55 (L2), 89-96 (L3), 30-35b (H1), 47-58 (H2), and 93-101 (H3) (MacCallum et al. *J. Mol. Biol.* 262: 732-745 (1996)); and

(d) combinations of (a), (b), and/or (c), including HVR amino acid residues 46-56 (L2), 47-56 (L2), 48-56 (L2), 49-56 (L2), 26-35 (H1), 26-35b (H1), 49-65 (H2), 93-102 (H3), and 94-102 (H3).

[00108] In some embodiments, HVR residues comprise those identified in Figures 3A-D or 4A-D, Table 4 or Table 5 or elsewhere in the specification.

[00109] Unless otherwise indicated, HVR residues and other residues in the variable domain (e.g., FR residues) are numbered herein according to Kabat et al., *supra*.

[00110] "Framework" or "FR" residues are those variable domain residues other than the hypervariable region residues as herein defined. The FR of a variable domain generally consists of four FR domains: FR1, FR2, FR3 and FR4. Accordingly, the HVR and FR sequences generally appear in the following sequence in VH (or VL): FR1-H1(L1)-FR2-H2(L2)-FR3-H3(L3)-FR4. In certain embodiments, one or more FR residue may be modified to modulate the stability of the antibody or to modulate the three-dimensional positioning of one or more HVR of the antibody to, e.g., enhance binding.

[00111] A "full length antibody" is one which comprises an antigen-binding variable region as well as a light chain constant domain (CL) and heavy chain constant domains, CH1, CH2 and CH3. The constant domains may be native sequence constant domains (e.g. human native sequence constant domains) or amino acid sequence variants thereof.

[00112] The terms "full length antibody," "intact antibody," and "whole antibody" are used herein interchangeably to refer to an antibody having a structure substantially similar to a native antibody structure or having heavy chains that contain an Fc region as defined herein.

[00113] A "naked antibody" refers to an antibody that is not conjugated to a heterologous moiety (e.g., a cytotoxic moiety or radiolabel). The naked antibody may be present in a pharmaceutical formulation.

[00114] "Native antibodies" refer to naturally occurring immunoglobulin molecules with varying structures. For example, native IgG antibodies are heterotetrameric glycoproteins of about 150,000 daltons, composed of two identical light chains and two identical heavy chains that are disulfide-bonded. From N- to C-terminus, each heavy chain has a variable region (VH), also called a variable heavy domain or a heavy chain variable domain, followed by three constant domains (CH1, CH2 and CH3). Similarly, from N- to C-terminus, each light chain has a variable region (VL), also called a variable light domain or a light chain variable domain, followed by a constant light (CL) domain. The light chain of an antibody may be assigned to one of two types, called kappa (κ) and lambda (λ), based on the amino acid sequence of its constant domain.

[00115] Antibody "effector functions" refer to those biological activities of an antibody that result in activation of the immune system other than activation of the complement pathway. Such activities are largely found in the Fc region (a native sequence Fc region or amino acid sequence variant Fc region) of an antibody. Examples of antibody effector functions include, for example, Fc receptor binding and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC). In some embodiments, the antibody herein essentially lacks effector function. In another embodiment, the antibody herein retains minimal effector function. Methods of modifying or eliminating effector

function are well-known in the art and include, but are not limited to, eliminating all or a portion of the Fc region responsible for the effector function (ie, using an antibody or antibody fragment in a format lacking all or a portion of the Fc region such as, but not limited to, a Fab fragment, a single-chain antibody, and the like as described herein and as known in the art; modifying the Fc region at one or more amino acid positions to eliminate effector function (Fc binding-impacting: positions 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 256, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 301, 303, 311, 322, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 414, 416, 419, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, and 439; and modifying the glycosylation of the antibody (including, but not limited to, producing the antibody in an environment that does not permit wild-type mammalian glycosylation, removing one or more carbohydrate groups from an already-glycosylated antibody, and modifying the antibody at one or more amino acid positions to eliminate the ability of the antibody to be glycosylated at those positions (including, but not limited to N297G and N297A and D265A).

[00116] Antibody "complement activation" functions, or properties of an antibody that enable or trigger "activation of the complement pathway" are used interchangeably, and refer to those biological activities of an antibody that engage or stimulate the complement pathway of the immune system in a subject. Such activities include, e.g., C1q binding and complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), and may be mediated by both the Fc portion and the non-Fc portion of the antibody. Methods of modifying or eliminating complement activation function are well-known in the art and include, but are not limited to, eliminating all or a portion of the Fc region responsible for complement activation (ie., using an antibody or antibody fragment in a format lacking all or a portion of the Fc region such as, but not limited to, a Fab fragment, a single-chain antibody, and the like as described herein and as known in the art, or modifying the Fc region at one or more amino acid positions to eliminate or lessen interactions with complement components or the ability to activate complement components, such as positions 270, 322, 329 and 321, known to be involved in C1q binding), and modifying or eliminating a portion of the non-Fc region responsible for complement activation (ie, modifying the CH1 region at position 132 (see, e.g., Vidarte et al., (2001) J. Biol. Chem. 276(41): 38217-38223)).

[00117] Depending on the amino acid sequence of the constant domain of their heavy chains, full length antibodies can be assigned to different "classes". There are five major classes of full length antibodies: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into "subclasses" (isotypes), e.g., IgGl, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant domains that correspond to the different classes of antibodies are called alpha, delta, epsilon, gamma, and mu, respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known in the art.

[00118] The term "recombinant antibody", as used herein, refers to an antibody (e.g. a chimeric, humanized, or human antibody or antigen-binding fragment thereof) that is expressed by a recombinant host cell comprising nucleic acid encoding the antibody.

[00119] The terms "host cell," "host cell line," and "host cell culture" are used interchangeably and refer to cells into which exogenous nucleic acid has been introduced, including the progeny of such cells. Host cells include "transformants" and "transformed cells," which include the primary transformed cells and progeny derived therefrom without regard to the number of passages. Progeny may not be completely identical in nucleic acid content to a parent cell, but may contain mutations. Mutant progeny that have the same function or biological activity as screened or selected for in the originally transformed cell are included herein. Examples of "host cells" for producing recombinant antibodies include: (1) mammalian cells, for example, Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO), COS, myeloma cells (including Y0 and NS0 cells), baby hamster kidney (BHK), Hela and Vero cells; (2) insect cells, for example, sf9, sf21 and Tn5; (3) plant cells, for example plants belonging to the genus *Nicotiana* (e.g. *Nicotiana tabacum*); (4) yeast cells, for example, those belonging to the genus *Saccharomyces* (e.g. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) or the genus *Aspergillus* (e.g. *Aspergillus niger*); (5) bacterial cells, for example *Escherichia coli* cells or *Bacillus subtilis* cells, etc.

[00120] As used herein, "specifically binding" or "binds specifically to" refers to an antibody selectively or preferentially binding to an antigen. The binding affinity is generally determined using a standard assay, such as Scatchard analysis, or surface plasmon resonance technique (e.g. using BIACORE®).

[00121] An "antibody that binds to the same epitope" as a reference antibody refers to an antibody that blocks binding of the reference antibody to its antigen in a competition assay by 50% or more, and conversely, the reference antibody blocks binding of the antibody to its antigen in a competition assay by 50% or more. In some embodiments, an anti-BACE1 antibody forming one of the bispecific or multispecific antibodies of the invention binds to the BACE1 epitope bound by YW412.8.31. An exemplary competition assay is provided herein.

[00122] The term "cytotoxic agent" as used herein refers to a substance that inhibits or prevents a cellular function and/or causes cell death or destruction. Cytotoxic agents include, but are not limited to, radioactive isotopes (e.g., At^{211}, I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90}, Re^{186}, Re^{188}, Sm^{153}, Bi^{212}, P^{32}, Pb^{212} and radioactive isotopes of Lu); chemotherapeutic agents or drugs (e.g., methotrexate, adriamicin, vinca alkaloids (vincristine, vinblastine, etoposide), doxorubicin, melphalan, mitomycin C, chlorambucil, daunorubicin or other intercalating agents); growth inhibitory agents; enzymes and fragments thereof such as nucleolytic enzymes; antibiotics; toxins such as small molecule toxins or

enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant or animal origin, including fragments and/or variants thereof; and the various antitumor or anticancer agents disclosed herein.

[00123] An "effective amount" of an agent, e.g., a pharmaceutical formulation, refers to an amount effective, at dosages and for periods of time necessary, to achieve the desired therapeutic or prophylactic result.

[00124] The term "Fc region" herein is used to define a C-terminal region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain that contains at least a portion of the constant region. The term includes native sequence Fc regions and variant Fc regions. In some embodiments, a human IgG heavy chain Fc region extends from Cys226, or from Pro230, to the carboxyl-terminus of the heavy chain. However, the C-terminal lysine (Lys447) of the Fc region may or may not be present. Unless otherwise specified herein, numbering of amino acid residues in the Fc region or constant region is according to the EU numbering system, also called the EU index, as described in Kabat et al., *Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest*, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, 1991.

[00125] The term "FcRn receptor" or "FcRn" as used herein refers to an Fc receptor ("n" indicates neonatal) which is known to be involved in transfer of maternal IgGs to a fetus through the human or primate placenta, or yolk sac (rabbits) and to a neonate from the colostrum through the small intestine. It is also known that FcRn is involved in the maintenance of constant serum IgG levels by binding the IgG molecules and recycling them into the serum. "FcRn binding region" or "FcRn receptor binding region" refers to that portion an an antibody which interacts with the FcRn receptor. Certain modifications in the FcRn binding region of an antibody increase the affinity of the antibody or fragment thereof, for the FcRn, and also increase the in vivo half-life of the molecule. Amino acid substitutions in one or more of the following amino acid positions 251 256, 285, 290, 308, 314, 385, 389, 428, 434 and 436 increases the interaction of the antibody with the FcRn receptor. Substitutions at the following positions also increases the interaction of an antibody with the FcRn receptor 238, 265, 272, 286, 303, 305, 307, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 413, 424 or 434, e.g., substitution of (US Patent No. 7,371,826).

[00126] An "immunoconjugate" is an antibody conjugated to one or more heterologous molecule(s), including but not limited to a label or cytotoxic agent. Optionally such conjugation is via a linker.

[00127] A "linker" as used herein is a structure that covalently or non-covalently connects the anti-TfR antibody to heterologous molecule. In certain embodiments, a linker is a peptide. In other embodiments, a linker is a chemical linker.

[00128] A "label" is a marker coupled with the antibody herein and used for detection or imaging. Examples of such labels include: radiolabel, a fluorophore, a chromophore, or an affinity

tag. In some embodiments, the label is a radiolabel used for medical imaging, for example tc99m or I123, or a spin label for nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) imaging (also known as magnetic resonance imaging, mri), such as iodine-123 again, iodine-131, indium-111, fluorine-19, carbon-13, nitrogen-15, oxygen-17, gadolinium, manganese, iron, etc.

[00129] An "individual" or "subject" is a mammal. Mammals include, but are not limited to, domesticated animals (e.g., cows, sheep, cats, dogs, and horses), primates (e.g., humans and non-human primates such as monkeys), rabbits, and rodents (e.g., mice and rats). In certain embodiments, the individual or subject is a human.

[00130] An "isolated" antibody is one which has been separated from a component of its natural environment. In some embodiments, an antibody is purified to greater than 95% or 99% purity as determined by, for example, electrophoretic (e.g., SDS-PAGE, isoelectric focusing (IEF), capillary electrophoresis) or chromatographic (e.g., ion exchange or reverse phase HPLC) methods. For review of methods for assessment of antibody purity, see, e.g., Flatman et al., *J. Chromatogr. B* 848:79-87 (2007).

[00131] An "isolated nucleic acid refers to a nucleic acid molecule that has been separated from a component of its natural environment. An isolated nucleic acid includes a nucleic acid molecule contained in cells that ordinarily contain the nucleic acid molecule, but the nucleic acid molecule is present extrachromosomally or at a chromosomal location that is different from its natural chromosomal location.

[00132] "Isolated nucleic acid encoding an anti-TfR antibody" refers to one ormore nucleic acid molecules encoding antibody heavy and light chains (or fragments thereof), including such nucleic acid molecule(s) in a single vector or separate vectors, and such nucleic acid molecule(s) present at one or more locations in a host cell.

[00133] The term "package insert" is used to refer to instructions customarily included in commercial packages of therapeutic products, that contain information about the indications, usage, dosage, administration, combination therapy, contraindications and/or warnings concerning the use of such therapeutic products.

[00134] "Percent (%) amino acid sequence identity" with respect to a reference polypeptide sequence is defined as the percentage of amino acid residues in a candidate sequence that are identical with the amino acid residues in the reference polypeptide sequence, after aligning the sequences and introducing gaps, if necessary, to achieve the maximum percent sequence identity, and not considering any conservative substitutions as part of the sequence identity. Alignment for purposes of determining percent amino acid sequence identity can be achieved in various ways that are within the skill in the art, for instance, using publicly available computer software such as BLAST, BLAST-2, ALIGN or Megalign (DNASTAR) software. Those skilled in the art can

determine appropriate parameters for aligning sequences, including any algorithms needed to achieve maximal alignment over the full length of the sequences being compared. For purposes herein, however, % amino acid sequence identity values are generated using the sequence comparison computer program ALIGN-2. The ALIGN-2 sequence comparison computer program was authored by Genentech, Inc., and the source code has been filed with user documentation in the U.S. Copyright Office, Washington D.C., 20559, where it is registered under U.S. Copyright Registration No. TXU510087. The ALIGN-2 program is publicly available from Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, California, or may be compiled from the source code. The ALIGN-2 program should be compiled for use on a UNIX operating system, including digital UNIX V4.0D. All sequence comparison parameters are set by the ALIGN-2 program and do not vary.

[00135] In situations where ALIGN-2 is employed for amino acid sequence comparisons, the % amino acid sequence identity of a given amino acid sequence A to, with, or against a given amino acid sequence B (which can alternatively be phrased as a given amino acid sequence A that has or comprises a certain % amino acid sequence identity to, with, or against a given amino acid sequence B) is calculated as follows:

100 times the fraction X/Y

where X is the number of amino acid residues scored as identical matches by the sequence alignment program ALIGN-2 in that program's alignment of A and B, and where Y is the total number of amino acid residues in B. It will be appreciated that where the length of amino acid sequence A is not equal to the length of amino acid sequence B, the % amino acid sequence identity of A to B will not equal the % amino acid sequence identity of B to A. Unless specifically stated otherwise, all % amino acid sequence identity values used herein are obtained as described in the immediately preceding paragraph using the ALIGN-2 computer program.

[00136] The term "pharmaceutical formulation" refers to a preparation which is in such form as to permit the biological activity of an active ingredient contained therein to be effective, and which contains no additional components which are unacceptably toxic to a subject to which the formulation would be administered.

[00137] A "pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" refers to an ingredient in a pharmaceutical formulation, other than an active ingredient, which is nontoxic to a subject., A pharmaceutically acceptable carrier includes, but is not limited to, a buffer, excipient, stabilizer, or preservative.

[00138] As used herein, "treatment" (and grammatical variations thereof such as "treat" or "treating") refers to clinical intervention in an attempt to alter the natural course of the individual being treated, and can be performed either for prophylaxis or during the course of clinical pathology. Desirable effects of treatment include, but are not limited to, preventing occurrence or

recurrence of disease, alleviation of symptoms, diminishment of any direct or indirect pathological consequences of the disease, preventing metastasis, decreasing the rate of disease progression, amelioration or palliation of the disease state, and remission or improved prognosis. In some embodiments, antibodies of the invention are used to delay development of a disease or to slow the progression of a disease.

[00139] The term "variable region" or "variable domain" refers to the domain of an antibody heavy or light chain that is involved in binding the antibody to antigen. The variable domains of the heavy chain and light chain (VH and VL, respectively) of a native antibody generally have similar structures, with each domain comprising four conserved framework regions (FRs) and three hypervariable regions (HVRs). (See, e.g., Kindt et al. *Kuby Immunology*, 6th ed., W.H. Freeman and Co., page 91 (2007).) A single VH or VL domain may be sufficient to confer antigen-binding specificity. Furthermore, antibodies that bind a particular antigen may be isolated using a VH or VL domain from an antibody that binds the antigen to screen a library of complementary VL or VH domains, respectively. See, e.g., Portolano et al., *J. Immunol.* 150:880-887 (1993); Clarkson et al., *Nature* 352:624-628 (1991).

[00140] The term "vector," as used herein, refers to a nucleic acid molecule capable of propagating another nucleic acid to which it is linked. The term includes the vector as a self-replicating nucleic acid structure as well as the vector incorporated into the genome of a host cell into which it has been introduced. Certain vectors are capable of directing the expression of nucleic acids to which they are operatively linked. Such vectors are referred to herein as "expression vectors."

2. COMPOSITIONS AND METHODS

A. Production of Anti-TfR Antibodies and Conjugates Thereof

[00141] In some aspects, the invention is based, in part, on anti-TfR antibodies that can be used to transport desired molecules across the BBB. In certain embodiments, antibodies that bind to human TfR are provided. In certain embodiments, antibodies that bind to both human TfR and primate TfR are provided. Antibodies of the invention are useful, e.g., for the diagnosis or treatment of diseases affecting the brain and/or CNS.

A. Exemplary Anti-TfR Antibodies

[00142] In some aspects, the invention provides isolated antibodies that bind to TfR. In certain embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody of the invention binds specifically to both human TfR and primate TfR. In certain such embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody of the invention does not inhibit binding of transferrin to the TfR. In certain such embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody of the invention binds to an apical domain of TfR. In other certain such embodiments, an anti-TfR

antibody of the invention binds to a non-apical domain of TfR. In certain aspects, the anti-TfR antibodies may be used to transport one or more conjugated imaging or therapeutic compounds across the BBB.

[00143] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:32; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:33; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:34; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:29; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:30; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:31. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 7A4, as shown in Figure 3A and Table 3.

[00144] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:37; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:38; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:39; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:35; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:30; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:36. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 8A2, as shown in Figure 3A and Table 3.

[00145] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 32; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:40; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 34; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 35; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 30; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 36. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 15D2, as shown in Figure 3A and Table 3.

[00146] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 37; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 43; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 44; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 41; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 30; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 42. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 10D11, as shown in Figure 3A and Table 3.

[00147] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 32; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 33; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 34; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 29; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 30; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:31. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 7B10, as shown in Figure 3A and Table 3.

[00148] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:53; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:54; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:55; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:50; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:51; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:52. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 15G11, as shown in Figure 3B and Table 3.

[00149] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:53; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:58; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:59; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:56; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:57; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:52. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 16G5, as shown in Figure 3B and Table 3.

[00150] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:53; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:63; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:55; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:60; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:61; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:62. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 13C3, as shown in Figure 3B and Table 3.

[00151] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:53; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:65; (c) HVR-H3

comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:55; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:60; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:64; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:52. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 16G4, as shown in Figure 3B and Table 3.

[00152] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:74; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:75; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:76; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:71; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:72; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:73. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 16F6, as shown in Figure 3C and Table 3.

[00153] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:80; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:81; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:82; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:77; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:78; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:79. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 7G7, as shown in Figure 3D and Table 3.

[00154] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 80; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:83; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:84; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:77; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:78; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:79. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 4C2, as shown in Figure 3D and Table 3.

[00155] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:88; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:89; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:90; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:85; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:86; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:87. In some aspects, the

antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 1B12, as shown in Figure 3D and Table 3.

[00156] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:94; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:95; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:96; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:91; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:92; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:93. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 13D4, as shown in Figure 3D and Table 3.

[00157] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:32; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:33; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:34; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:29; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:30; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:127. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences. In another aspect, the antibody is clone 7A4.v15, as shown in Figure 4B and Table 4.

[00158] The clones above fall into four complementation groups, with sequence similarity within the HVRs. As shown in Table 3, consensus sequences are readily derivable from the provided antibody sequences for each HVR. As one nonlimiting example, the class I antibody consensus HVRs are as follows:

HVR-L1: Arg-Ala-Ser-Glu-Ser-Val-Asp-[Ser or Asp]-Tyr-Gly-[Asn or Pro]-Ser-Phe-Met-His (SEQ ID NO: 45);

HVR-L2: Arg-Ala-Ser-Asn-Leu-Glu-Ser (SEQ ID NO: 30);

HVR-L3: Gln-[Gln or His]-Ser-Asn-Glu-[Ala, Gly or Asp]-Pro-Pro-Thr (SEQ ID NO: 46);

HVR-H1: Asp-Tyr-[Ala or Gly]-Met-His (SEQ ID NO: 47);

HVR-H2: [Gly or Val]-Ile-Ser-[Thr, Phe or Pro]-Tyr-[Phe or Ser]-Gly-[Arg or Lys]-Thr-Asn-Tyr-[Asn or Ser]-Gln-[Lys or Asn]-Phe-[Lys or Met]-Gly (SEQ ID NO: 48);

HVR-H3: Gly-Leu-Ser-Gly-Asn-[Tyr or Phe]-Val-[Met or Val]-Asp-[Tyr or Phe] (SEQ ID NO: 49). (see Table 4). The consensus sequences for class II and IV are also provided in Table 4.

[00159] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:47; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:48; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:49; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid

sequence of SEQ ID NO:45; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:30; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:46. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences.

[00160] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:53; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:69; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:70; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:66; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:67; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:68. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences.

[00161] In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody is provided comprising at least one, two, three, four, five, or six HVRs selected from (a) HVR-H1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:100; (b) HVR-H2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:101; (c) HVR-H3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:102; (d) HVR-L1 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:97; (e) HVR-L2 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:98; and (f) HVR-L3 comprising the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:99. In some aspects, the antibody comprises all six of the above-recited HVR sequences.

[00162] In some aspects, an antibody is provided comprising at least one, at least two, or all three VH HVR sequences of any of the antibodies described above. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises the HVR-H3 sequence of any one of the antibodies described above. In another embodiment, the antibody comprises the HVR-H3 and HVR-L3 sequences of any one of the antibodies described above. In a further embodiment, the antibody comprises the HVR-H3, HVR-L3 and HVR-H2 sequences of any one of the antibodies described above. In another embodiment, the antibody comprises the HVR-H1, HVR-H2 and HVR-H3 sequences of any one of the antibodies described above. In another aspect, an antibody is provided comprising at least one, at least two or all three VL HVR sequences of any of the antibodies described above. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises the HVR-L1, HVR-L2, and HVR-L3 sequences of any one of the antibodies described above.

[00163] In another aspect, an antibody of the invention comprises (a) a VH domain comprising at least one, at least two, or all three VH HVR sequences selected from the HVR-H1, HVR-H2, and HVR-H3 sequences of any one of the antibodies described above, wherein the VH domain comprises an M108L mutation; and (b) a VL domain comprising at least one, at least two, or all three VL HVR sequences selected from the HVR-L1, HVR-L2 and HVR-L3 sequences of any one of the antibodies described above.

[00164] In any of the above embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody is humanized. In some embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody comprises HVRs as in any of the above embodiments, and further comprises an acceptor human framework, e.g. a human immunoglobulin framework or a human consensus framework. In another embodiment, an anti-TfR antibody comprises HVRs as in any of the above embodiments, and further comprises a VH or VL comprising one or more amino acid substitutions in one or more FR regions. Per Example 2 herein, Applicants performed alanine scanning on certain antibodies selected from those above, and determined that similar or improved binding was obtained despite amino acid modifications at selected FR positions. As shown in Figures 6-1 and 6-2 and Example 2 herein, for the class I-III groups of antibodies, variant forms of the antibodies with modifications at one or more residues of an FR retained affinity and binding specifity. For example, for antibody 15G11, positions 43 and 48 in the light chain FR2, position 48 in the heavy chain FR2 and positions 67, 69, 71 and 73 in the heavy chain FR3 could be modified as shown in Figures 6-1 and 6-2 and the resulting antibody still retained specificity and strong binding affinity for human/primate TfR. In another example, for antibody 7A4, positions 58 and 68 of the light chain FR3, position 24 in the heavy chain FR1 and position 71 in the heavy chain FR3 could be modified as shown in Figures 6-1 and 6-2 and the resulting antibody still retained specificity and strong binding affinity for human/primate TfR. In a third example, for antibody 16F6, positions 43 and 44 of the light chain FR2 and positions 71 and 78 of the heavy chain FR3 could be modified as shown in Figures 6-1 and 6-2 and the resulting antibody still retained specificity and strong binding affinity for human/primate TfR. In some embodiments, an antibody comprises an VH domain with an M108L mutation.

[00165] In another aspect, an anti-TfR antibody comprises a heavy chain variable domain (VH) sequence having at least 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99%, or 100% sequence identity to the amino acid sequence of any one of SEQ ID NOs: 7-10, 15-18, 20, 25-28, 108, 114, 120, 126, 153, and 154. In certain embodiments, a VH sequence having at least 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99% identity contains substitutions (e.g., conservative substitutions), insertions, or deletions relative to the reference sequence, but an anti-TfR antibody comprising that sequence retains the ability to bind to TfR. In certain embodiments, a total of 1 to 10 amino acids have been substituted, inserted and/or deleted in any one of SEQ ID NOs:7-10, 15-18, 20, 25-28, 108, 114, 120, 126, 153, and 154. In certain embodiments, substitutions, insertions, or deletions occur in regions outside the HVRs (i.e., in the FRs). Optionally, the anti-TfR antibody comprises the VH sequence of any one of SEQ ID NOs: 7-10, 15-18, 20 25-28, 108, 114, 120, 126, 153, and 154, including post-translational modifications of that sequence. In a particular embodiment, the VH for a particular antibody comprises one, two or three HVRs selected from: the HVRs set forth above and in Table 3 or 4 for that particular

antibody. VH sequences for certain antibodies are shown in Figures 3 and 4 herein. In some embodiments, the invention provides an anti-TfR antibody comprising a VH sequence of SEQ ID NO: 158 or 159.

[00166] In another aspect, an anti-TfR antibody is provided, wherein the antibody comprises a light chain variable domain (VL) having at least 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, 99%, or 100% sequence identity to the amino acid sequence of any one of SEQ ID NOs:4-6, 11-14, 19, 21-24, 105, 111, 117, 123, 151, and 152. In certain embodiments, a VL sequence having at least 90%, 91%, 92%, 93%, 94%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98%, or 99% identity contains substitutions (e.g., conservative substitutions), insertions, or deletions relative to the reference sequence, but an anti-TfR antibody comprising that sequence retains the ability to bind to TfR. In certain embodiments, a total of 1 to 10 amino acids have been substituted, inserted and/or deleted in any one of SEQ ID NOs:4-6, 11-14, 19, 21-24, 105, 111, 117, 123, 151, and 152. In certain embodiments, the substitutions, insertions, or deletions occur in regions outside the HVRs (i.e., in the FRs). Optionally, the anti-TfR antibody comprises the VL sequence in any of SEQ ID NOs:4-6, 11-14, 19, 21-24, 105, 111, 117, 123, 151, and 152, including post-translational modifications of that sequence. In a particular embodiment, the VL comprises one, two or three HVRs selected from the HVRs set forth above and in Table 4 or 5 for that particular antibody. VL sequences for certain antibodies are shown in Figures 3 and 4 herein. In some embodiments, the invention provides an anti-TfR antibody comprising a VL sequence of SEQ ID NO: 162 or 163.

[00167] In another aspect, an anti-TfR antibody is provided, wherein the antibody comprises a VH as in any of the embodiments provided above, and a VL as in any of the embodiments provided above. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises the VL and VH sequences, respectively, in SEQ ID NOs: 4 and 7; 5 and 8; 5 and 9; 6 and 10; 4 and 7; 11 and 15; 12 and 16; 13 and 17; 14 and 18; 19 and 20; 21 and 25; 22 and 26; 23 and 27; 24 and 28; 105 and 108; 152 and 108; 151 and 108; 152 and 153; 152 and 154; 105 and 153; 105 and 154; 111 and 114; 117 and 120; and 123 and 126 , including post-translational modifications of those sequences. In some embodiments, the invention provides an anti-TfR antibody comprising a VH sequence of SEQ ID NO: 158 or 159 and a VL sequence of SEQ ID NO: 162 or 163. In some embodiments, the invention provides an anti-TfR antibody comprising a VH sequence of SEQ ID NO: 158 and a VL sequence of SEQ ID NO: 162, or a VH sequence of SEQ ID NO: 159 and a VL sequence of SEQ ID NO: 163.

[00168] In a further aspect, an antibody is provided that binds to the same epitope as an anti-TfR antibody provided herein. For example, in certain embodiments, an antibody is provided that binds to the same epitope as an anti-TfR antibody comprising VL and VH sequences, respectively, of SEQ ID NOs: 4 and 7; 5 and 8; 5 and 9; 6 and 10; 4 and 7; 11 and 15; 12 and 16; 13 and 17; 14

and 18; 19 and 20; 21 and 25; 22 and 26; 23 and 27; 24 and 28; 105 and 108; 152 and 108; 151 and 108; 152 and 153; 152 and 154; 105 and 153; 105 and 154; 111 and 114; 117 and 120; or 123 and 126. In some aspects, the antibody competes with any of the antibodies in Class I (ie., clones 7A4, 8A2, 15D2, 10D11, or 7B10, or affinity-matured versions of any of those antibodies) for binding to TfR. In another aspect, the antibody competes with any of the antibodies in Class II (ie, clones 15G11, 16G5, 13C3 or 16G, or affinity-matured versions of any of those antibodies) for binding to TfR. In another aspect, the antibody competes with clone 16F6 or affinity-matured versions thereof for binding to TfR. In another aspect, the antibody competes with any of the antibodies in Class IV (ie, clones 7G7, 4C2, 1B12 or 13D4, or affinity matured versions thereof) for binding to TfR.

[00169] In a further aspect of the invention, an anti-TfR antibody according to any of the above embodiments is a monoclonal antibody, including a chimeric, humanized or human antibody. In some embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody is an antibody fragment, e.g., a Fv, Fab, Fab', scFv, diabody, or $F(ab')_2$ fragment. In another embodiment, the antibody is a full length antibody, e.g., an intact IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, or IgG4 antibody or other antibody class or isotype as defined herein.

[00170] In some embodiments, the invention provides an anti-TfR antibody comprising a heavy chain having the sequence of SEQ ID NO: 160 and a light chain having the sequence of SEQ ID NO: 61. In some such embodiments, the antibody is a multispecific antibody.

[00171] In a further aspect, an anti-TfR antibody according to any of the above embodiments may incorporate any of the features, singly or in combination, as described in Sections 1-7 below:

1. Antibody Affinity

[00172] In certain embodiments, an antibody provided herein has a dissociation constant (Kd) of $\leq$ 1μM, $\leq$ 100 nM, $\leq$ 10 nM, $\leq$ 1 nM, $\leq$ 0.1 nM, $\leq$ 0.01 nM, or $\leq$ 0.001 nM (e.g. 10^{-8} M or less, e.g. from 10^{-8} M to 10^{-13} M, e.g., from 10^{-9} M to 10^{-13} M).

[00173] In certain aspects of the present invention, a "low affinity" anti-TfR antibody of the invention is selected, based, e.g., on the results in Example 5 and in Atwal et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* **3**, 84ra43 (2011) and Yu et al., *Sci.* Transl. *Med.* 25 May 2011: Vol. 3, Issue 84, p. 84ra44, showing that such lower-affinity antibodies to TfR display improved CNS (for example, brain) uptake and/or persistence in the brain/CNS. In order to identify such low affinity antibodies, various assays for measuring antibody affinity are available including, without limitation: Scatchard assay and surface plasmon resonance technique (e.g. using BIACORE®). According to some embodiments of the invention, the antibody has an affinity for human or primate TfR from about 5nM, or from about 20 nM, or from about 100 nM, to about 50 μM, or to about 30 μM, or to about 10 μM, or to about 1 μM, or to about 500 nM. Thus, the affinity may be in the range from about 5 nM to about 50 μM, or in the range from about 20 nM to about 30 μM, or in the range

from about 30 nM to about 30 μM, or in the range from about 50 nM to about 1 μM, or in the range from about 100 nM to about 500 nM, e.g. as measured by Scatchard analysis or BIACORE®. In another embodiment of the invention, the antibody has a dissociation half-life from TfR of less than 1 minute, less than 2 minutes, less than 3 minutes, less than four minutes, less than 5 minutes, or less than 10 minutes to about 20 minutes, or to about 30 minutes, as measured by competition binding analysis or BIACORE®.

[00174] Thus, the invention provides a method of making an antibody useful for transporting a neurological disorder drug across the blood-brain barrier comprising selecting an antibody from a panel of antibodies against TfR because it has an affinity for TfR which is in the range from about 5nM, or from about 20 nM, or from about 100 nM, to about 50 μM, or to about 30 μM, or to about 10 μM, or to about 1 μM, or to about 500 mM. Thus, the affinity may be in the range from about 5 nM to about 50 μM, or in the range from about 20 nM to about 30 μM, or in the range from about 30 nM to about 30 μM, or in the range from about 50 nM to about 1 μM, or in the range from about 100 nM to about 500 nM, e.g. as measured by Scatchard analysis or BIACORE®. As will be understood by one of ordinary skill in the art, conjugating a heterologous molecule/compound to an antibody will often decrease the affinity of the antibody for its target due, e.g., to steric hindrance or even to elimination of one binding arm if the antibody is made multispecific with one or more arms binding to a different antigen than the antibody's original target. In some embodiments, a low affinity antibody of the invention specific for TfR conjugated to anti-BACE1 had a Kd for TfR as measured by BIACORE of about 30 nM. In another embodiment, a low affinity antibody of the invention specific for TfR conjugated to BACE1 had a Kd for TfR as measured by BIACORE of about 600 nM. In another embodiment, a low affinity antibody of the invention specific for TfR conjugated to BACE1 had a Kd for TfR as measured by BIACORE of about 20 μM. In another embodiment, a low affinity antibody of the invention specific for TfR conjugated to BACE1 had a Kd for TfR as measured by BIACORE of about 30 μM.

[00175] In some embodiments, Kd is measured by a radiolabeled antigen binding assay (RIA). In some embodiments, an RIA is performed with the Fab version of an antibody of interest and its antigen. For example, solution binding affinity of Fabs for antigen is measured by equilibrating Fab with a minimal concentration of (^{125}I)-labeled antigen in the presence of a titration series of unlabeled antigen, then capturing bound antigen with an anti-Fab antibody-coated plate (see, e.g., Chen et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 293:865-881(1999)). To establish conditions for the assay, MICROTITER® multi-well plates (Thermo Scientific) are coated overnight with 5 μg/ml of a capturing anti-Fab antibody (Cappel Labs) in 50 mM sodium carbonate (pH 9.6), and subsequently blocked with 2% (w/v) bovine serum albumin in PBS for two to five hours at room temperature

(approximately 23°C). In a non-adsorbent plate (Nunc #269620), 100 pM or 26 pM [^{125}I]-antigen are mixed with serial dilutions of a Fab of interest (e.g., consistent with assessment of the anti-VEGF antibody, Fab-12, in Presta et al., *Cancer Res.* 57:4593-4599 (1997)). The Fab of interest is then incubated overnight; however, the incubation may continue for a longer period (e.g., about 65 hours) to ensure that equilibrium is reached. Thereafter, the mixtures are transferred to the capture plate for incubation at room temperature (e.g., for one hour). The solution is then removed and the plate washed eight times with 0.1% polysorbate 20 (TWEEN-20®) in PBS. When the plates have dried, 150 µl/well of scintillant (MICROSCINT-20 ™; Packard) is added, and the plates are counted on a TOPCOUNT ™ gamma counter (Packard) for ten minutes. Concentrations of each Fab that give less than or equal to 20% of maximal binding are chosen for use in competitive binding assays.

[00176] In some aspects, the RIA is a Scatchard analysis. For example, the anti-TfR antibody of interest can be iodinated using the lactoperoxidase method (Bennett and Horuk, *Methods in Enzymology* 288 pg.134-148 (1997)). A radiolabeled anti-TfR antibody is purified from free ^{125}I-Na by gel filtration using a NAP-5 column and its specific activity measured. Competition reaction mixtures of 50 µL containing a fixed concentration of iodinated antibody and decreasing concentrations of serially diluted unlabeled antibody are placed into 96-well plates. Cells transiently expressing TfR are cultured in growth media, consisting of Dulbecco's modified eagle's medium (DMEM) (Genentech) supplemented with 10% FBS, 2 mM L-glutamine and 1 × penicillin-streptomycin at 37°C in 5% CO_2. Cells are detached from the dishes using Sigma Cell Dissociation Solution and washed with binding buffer (DMEM with 1% bovine serum albumin, 50 mM HEPES, pH 7.2, and 0.2% sodium azide). The washed cells are added at an approximate density of 200,000 cells in 0.2 mL of binding buffer to the 96-well plates containing the 50-µL competition reaction mixtures. The final concentration of the unlabeled antibody in the competition reaction with cells is varied, starting at 1000 nM and then decreasing by 1:2 fold dilution for 10 concentrations and including a zero-added, buffer-only sample. Competition reactions with cells for each concentration of unlabeled antibody are assayed in triplicate. Competition reactions with cells are incubated for 2 hours at room temperature. After the 2-hour incubation, the competition reactions are transferred to a filter plate and washed four times with binding buffer to separate free from bound iodinated antibody. The filters are counted by gamma counter and the binding data are evaluated using the fitting algorithm of Munson and Rodbard (1980) to determine the binding affinity of the antibody.

[00177] An exemplary BIACORE® analysis using the compositions of the invention may be performed as follows. Kd was measured using surface plasmon resonance assays using a BIACORE®-2000 (BIAcore, Inc., Piscataway, NJ) at 25°C using anti-human Fc kit (BiAcore Inc.,

Piscataway, NJ). Briefly, carboxymethylated dextran biosensor chips (CM5, BIACORE, Inc.) were activated with *N*-ethyl-*N'*- (3-dimethylaminopropyl)-carbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC) and *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (NHS) according to the supplier's instructions. Anti-human Fc antibody was diluted with 10 mM sodium acetate, pH 4.0, to 50 μg/ml before injection at a flow rate of 5 μl/minute to achieve approximately 10000 response units (RU) of coupled protein. Following the injection of antibody, 1 M ethanolamine was injected to block unreacted groups. For kinetics measurements, monospecific or multispecific anti-TfR antibody variants were injected in HBS-P to reach about 220 RU, then two-fold serial dilutions of MuTfR-His (0.61 nM to 157 nM) were injected in HBS-P at 25°C at a flow rate of approximately 30 μl/min. Association rates (kon) and dissociation rates (koff) were calculated using a simple one-to-one Langmuir binding model (BIACORE® Evaluation Software version 3.2) by simultaneously fitting the association and dissociation sensorgrams. The equilibrium dissociation constant (Kd) was calculated as the ratio koff/kon. See, e.g., Chen et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 293:865-881 (1999)

[00178] According to another embodiment, Kd is measured using surface plasmon resonance assays with a BIACORE®-2000 device (BIAcore, Inc., Piscataway, NJ) at 25°C using anti-human Fc kit (BiAcore Inc., Piscataway, NJ). Briefly, carboxymethylated dextran biosensor chips (CM5, BIACORE, Inc.) are activated with *N*-ethyl-*N'*- (3-dimethylaminopropyl)-carbodiimide hydrochloride (EDC) and *N*-hydroxysuccinimide (NHS) according to the supplier's instructions. Anti-human Fc antibody is diluted with 10 mM sodium acetate, pH 4.0, to 50 μg/ml before injection at a flow rate of 5 μl/minute to achieve approximately 10000 response units (RU) of coupled protein. Following the injection of antibody, 1 M ethanolamine is injected to block unreacted groups. For kinetics measurements, anti-TfR antibody variants are injected in HBS-P to reach about 220 RU, then two-fold serial dilutions of TfR-His (0.61 nM to 157 nM) are injected in HBS-P at 25°C at a flow rate of approximately 30 μl/min. Association rates (kon) and dissociation rates (koff) are calculated using a simple one-to-one Langmuir binding model (BIACORE ® Evaluation Software version 3.2) by simultaneously fitting the association and dissociation sensorgrams. The equilibrium dissociation constant (Kd) is calculated as the ratio koff/kon. See, e.g., Chen et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 293:865-881 (1999).

[00179] Several methods of determining the IC50 for a given compound are art-known; a common approach is to perform a competition binding assay, such as that described herein. In general, a high IC50 indicates that more of the antibody is required to inhibit binding of the known ligand, and thus that the antibody's affinity for that ligand is relatively low. Conversely, a low IC50 indicates that less of the antibody is required to inhibit binding of the known ligand, and thus that the antibody's affinity for that ligand is relatively high.

[00180] An exemplary competitive ELISA assay to measure IC50 is one in which increasing concentrations of anti-TfR or anti-TfR/brain antigen (i.e., anti-TfR/BACE1, anti-TfR/Abeta and the like) variant antibodies are used to compete against a biotinylated known anti-TfR antibody for binding to TfR. The anti-TfR competition ELISA was performed in Maxisorp plates (Neptune, N.J.) coated with 2.5 μg/ml of purified murine TfR extracellular domain in PBS at 4°C overnight. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and blocked using Superblock blocking buffer in PBS (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). A titration of each individual anti-TfR or anti-TfR/brain antigen (i.e., anti-TfR/BACE1 or anti-TfR/Abeta) (1:3 serial dilution) was combined with biotinylated known anti-TfR (0.5 nM final concentration) and added to the plate for 1 hour at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20, and HRP-streptavidin (Southern Biotech, Birmingham) was added to the plate and incubated for 1 hour at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20, and biotinylated anti-TfR antibody bound to the plate was detected using TMB substrate (BioFX Laboratories, Owings Mills).

2. Antibody Fragments

[00181] In certain embodiments, an antibody provided herein is an antibody fragment. Antibody fragments include, but are not limited to, Fab, Fab', Fab'-SH, $F(ab')_2$, Fv, and scFv fragments, and other fragments described below. For a review of certain antibody fragments, see Hudson et al. *Nat. Med.* 9:129-134 (2003). For a review of scFv fragments, see, e.g., Pluckthün, in *The Pharmacology of Monoclonal Antibodies*, vol. 113, Rosenburg and Moore eds., (Springer-Verlag, New York), pp. 269-315 (1994); see also WO 93/16185; and U.S. Patent Nos. 5,571,894 and 5,587,458. For discussion of Fab and $F(ab')_2$ fragments comprising salvage receptor binding epitope residues and having increased in vivo half-life, see U.S. Patent No. 5,869,046.

[00182] Diabodies are antibody fragments with two antigen-binding sites that may be bivalent or bispecific. See, for example, EP 404,097; WO 1993/01161; Hudson et al., *Nat. Med.* 9:129-134 (2003); and Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90: 6444-6448 (1993). Triabodies and tetrabodies are also described in Hudson et al., *Nat. Med.* 9:129-134 (2003).

[00183] Single-domain antibodies are antibody fragments comprising all or a portion of the heavy chain variable domain or all or a portion of the light chain variable domain of an antibody. In certain embodiments, a single-domain antibody is a human single-domain antibody (Domantis, Inc., Waltham, MA; *see,* e.g., U.S. Patent No. 6,248,516 B1).

[00184] Antibody fragments can be made by various techniques, including but not limited to proteolytic digestion of an intact antibody as well as production by recombinant host cells (e.g. *E. coli* or phage), as described herein.

3. Chimeric and Humanized Antibodies

[00185] In certain embodiments, an antibody provided herein is a chimeric antibody. Certain chimeric antibodies are described, e.g., in U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567; and Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:6851-6855 (1984)). In one example, a chimeric antibody comprises a non-human variable region (e.g., a variable region derived from a mouse, rat, hamster, rabbit, or non-human primate, such as a monkey) and a human constant region. Chimeric antibodies of interest herein include "primatized" antibodies comprising variable domain antigen-binding sequences derived from a non-human primate (*e.g.* Old World Monkey, such as baboon, rhesus or cynomolgus monkey) and human constant region sequences (US Pat No. 5,693,780). In a further example, a chimeric antibody is a "class switched" antibody in which the class or subclass has been changed from that of the parent antibody. Chimeric antibodies include antigen-binding fragments thereof.

[00186] In certain embodiments, a chimeric antibody is a humanized antibody. Typically, a non-human antibody is humanized to reduce immunogenicity to humans, while retaining the specificity and affinity of the parental non-human antibody. Generally, a humanized antibody comprises one or more variable domains in which HVRs, e.g., CDRs, (or portions thereof) are derived from a non-human antibody, and FRs (or portions thereof) are derived from human antibody sequences. A humanized antibody optionally will also comprise at least a portion of a human constant region. In some embodiments, some FR residues in a humanized antibody are substituted with corresponding residues from a non-human antibody (e.g., the antibody from which the HVR residues are derived), e.g., to restore or improve antibody specificity or affinity.

[00187] Humanized antibodies and methods of making them are reviewed, e.g., in Almagro and Fransson, *Front. Biosci.* 13:1619-1633 (2008), and are further described, e.g., in Riechmann et al., *Nature* 332:323-329 (1988); Queen et al., *Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA* 86:10029-10033 (1989); US Patent Nos. 5, 821,337, 7,527,791, 6,982,321, and 7,087,409; Kashmiri *et al.*, *Methods* 36:25-34 (2005) (describing specificity determining region (SDR) grafting); Padlan, *Mol. Immunol.* 28:489-498 (1991) (describing "resurfacing"); Dall'Acqua et al., *Methods* 36:43-60 (2005) (describing "FR shuffling"); and Osbourn et al., *Methods* 36:61-68 (2005) and Klimka et al., *Br. J. Cancer*, 83:252-260 (2000) (describing the "guided selection" approach to FR shuffling).

[00188] Human framework regions that may be used for humanization include but are not limited to: framework regions selected using the "best-fit" method (see, e.g., Sims et al. *J. Immunol.* 151:2296 (1993)); framework regions derived from the consensus sequence of human antibodies of a particular subgroup of light or heavy chain variable regions (see, e.g., Carter et al. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:4285 (1992); and Presta et al. *J. Immunol.*, 151:2623 (1993)); human mature (somatically mutated) framework regions or human germline framework regions

(see, e.g., Almagro and Fransson, *Front. Biosci.* 13:1619-1633 (2008)); and framework regions derived from screening FR libraries (see, e.g., Baca et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:10678-10684 (1997) and Rosok et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 271:22611-22618 (1996)).

4. Human Antibodies

[00189] In certain embodiments, an antibody provided herein is a human antibody. Human antibodies can be produced using various techniques known in the art. Human antibodies are described generally in van Dijk and van de Winkel, *Curr. Opin. Pharmacol.* 5: 368-74 (2001) and Lonberg, *Curr. Opin. Immunol.* 20:450-459 (2008).

[00190] Human antibodies may be prepared by administering an immunogen to a transgenic animal that has been modified to produce intact human antibodies or intact antibodies with human variable regions in response to antigenic challenge. Such animals typically contain all or a portion of the human immunoglobulin loci, which replace the endogenous immunoglobulin loci, or which are present extrachromosomally or integrated randomly into the animal's chromosomes. In such transgenic mice, the endogenous immunoglobulin loci have generally been inactivated. For review of methods for obtaining human antibodies from transgenic animals, see Lonberg, *Nat. Biotech.* 23:1117-1125 (2005). See also, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 6,075,181 and 6,150,584 describing XENOMOUSE™ technology; U.S. Patent No. 5,770,429 describing HUMAB® technology; U.S. Patent No. 7,041,870 describing K-M MOUSE® technology, and U.S. Patent Application Publication No. US 2007/0061900, describing VELOCIMOUSE® technology). Human variable regions from intact antibodies generated by such animals may be further modified, e.g., by combining with a different human constant region.

[00191] Human antibodies can also be made by hybridoma-based methods. Human myeloma and mouse-human heteromyeloma cell lines for the production of human monoclonal antibodies have been described. (See, e.g., Kozbor *J. Immunol.*, 133: 3001 (1984); Brodeur et al., *Monoclonal Antibody Production Techniques and Applications*, pp. 51-63 (Marcel Dekker, Inc., New York, 1987); and Boerner et al., *J. Immunol.*, 147: 86 (1991).) Human antibodies generated via human B-cell hybridoma technology are also described in Li et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 103:3557-3562 (2006). Additional methods include those described, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 7,189,826 (describing production of monoclonal human IgM antibodies from hybridoma cell lines) and Ni, *Xiandai Mianyixue*, 26(4):265-268 (2006) (describing human-human hybridomas). Human hybridoma technology (Trioma technology) is also described in Vollmers and Brandlein, *Histology and Histopathology*, 20(3):927-937 (2005) and Vollmers and Brandlein, *Methods and Findings in Experimental and Clinical Pharmacology*, 27(3):185-91 (2005).

[00192] Human antibodies may also be generated by isolating Fv clone variable domain sequences selected from human-derived phage display libraries. Such variable domain sequences

may then be combined with a desired human constant domain. Techniques for selecting human antibodies from antibody libraries are described below.

5. Library-Derived Antibodies

[00193] Antibodies of the invention may be isolated by screening combinatorial libraries for antibodies with the desired activity or activities. For example, a variety of methods are known in the art for generating phage display libraries and screening such libraries for antibodies possessing the desired binding characteristics. Such methods are reviewed, e.g., in Hoogenboom et al. in *Methods in Molecular Biology* 178:1-37 (O'Brien et al., ed., Human Press, Totowa, NJ, 2001) and further described, e.g., in the McCafferty et al., *Nature* 348:552-554; Clackson et al., *Nature* 352: 624-628 (1991); Marks et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 222: 581-597 (1992); Marks and Bradbury, in *Methods in Molecular Biology* 248:161-175 (Lo, ed., Human Press, Totowa, NJ, 2003); Sidhu et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 338(2): 299-310 (2004); Lee et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 340(5): 1073-1093 (2004); Fellouse, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 101(34): 12467-12472 (2004); and Lee et al., *J. Immunol. Methods* 284(1-2): 119-132(2004).

[00194] In certain phage display methods, repertoires of VH and VL genes are separately cloned by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and recombined randomly in phage libraries, which can then be screened for antigen-binding phage as described in Winter et al., *Ann. Rev. Immunol.*, 12: 433-455 (1994). Phage typically display antibody fragments, either as single-chain Fv (scFv) fragments or as Fab fragments. Libraries from immunized sources provide high-affinity antibodies to the immunogen without the requirement of constructing hybridomas. Alternatively, the naive repertoire can be cloned (e.g., from human) to provide a single source of antibodies to a wide range of non-self and also self antigens without any immunization as described by Griffiths et al., *EMBO J,* 12: 725-734 (1993). Finally, naive libraries can also be made synthetically by cloning unrearranged V-gene segments from stem cells, and using PCR primers containing random sequence to encode the highly variable CDR3 regions and to accomplish rearrangement *in vitro*, as described by Hoogenboom and Winter, *J. Mol. Biol.*, 227: 381-388 (1992). Patent publications describing human antibody phage libraries include, for example: US Patent No. 5,750,373, and US Patent Publication Nos. 2005/0079574, 2005/0119455, 2005/0266000, 2007/0117126, 2007/0160598, 2007/0237764, 2007/0292936, and 2009/0002360.

[00195] Antibodies or antibody fragments isolated from human antibody libraries are considered human antibodies or human antibody fragments herein.

6. Multispecific Antibodies

[00196] In certain embodiments, an antibody provided herein is a multispecific antibody, e.g. a bispecific antibody. Multispecific antibodies are monoclonal antibodies that have binding

specificities for at least two different sites. In certain embodiments, one of the binding specificities is for TfR and the other is for any other antigen. In certain embodiments, bispecific antibodies may bind to two different epitopes of TfR. Bispecific antibodies may also be used to localize cytotoxic agents to cells which express TfR. Bispecific antibodies can be prepared as full length antibodies or antibody fragments.

[00197] Techniques for making multispecific antibodies include, but are not limited to, recombinant co-expression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs having different specificities (see Milstein and Cuello, *Nature* 305: 537 (1983)), WO 93/08829, and Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.* 10: 3655 (1991)), and "knob-in-hole" engineering (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,731,168). Multi-specific antibodies may also be made by engineering electrostatic steering effects for making antibody Fc-heterodimeric molecules (WO 2009/089004A1); cross-linking two or more antibodies or fragments (see, e.g., US Patent No. 4,676,980, and Brennan et al., *Science*, 229: 81 (1985)); using leucine zippers to produce bi-specific antibodies (see, e.g., Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.*, 148(5):1547-1553 (1992)); using "diabody" technology for making bispecific antibody fragments (see, e.g., Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:6444-6448 (1993)); and using single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers (see,e.g. Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.*, 152:5368 (1994)); and preparing trispecific antibodies as described, e.g., in Tutt et al. *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

[00198] The antibody or fragment herein also includes a "Dual Acting FAb" or "DAF" comprising an antigen binding site that binds to TfR as well as another, different antigen (see, US 2008/0069820, for example).

[00199] According to some embodiments of the invention, the "coupling" is achieved by generating a multispecific antibody (e.g. a bispecific antibody). Multispecific antibodies are monoclonal antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different antigens or epitopes. In some embodiments, the multispecific antibody comprises a first antigen binding site which binds the TfR and a second antigen binding site which binds a brain antigen, such as beta-secretase 1 (BACE1) or Abeta, and the other brain antigens disclosed herein.

[00200] An exemplary brain antigen bound by such multispecific/bispecific antibody is BACE1, and an exemplary antibody binding thereto is the YW412.8.31 antibody in Figs. 16A-B herein.

[00201] In another embodiment, the brain antigen is Abeta, exemplary such antibodies being described in WO2007068412, WO2008011348, WO20080156622, and WO2008156621, expressly incorporated herein by reference, with an exemplary Abeta antibody comprising the IgG4 MABT5102A antibody comprising the heavy and light chain amino acid sequences in Figs. 11A and 11B, respectively.

[00202] Techniques for making multispecific antibodies include, but are not limited to, recombinant co-expression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs having different specificities (see Milstein and Cuello, *Nature* 305: 537 (1983)), WO 93/08829, and Traunecker et al., *EMBO J.* 10: 3655 (1991)), and "knob-in-hole" engineering (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,731,168). Multi-specific antibodies may also be made by engineering electrostatic steering effects for making antibody Fc-heterodimeric molecules (WO 2009/089004A1); cross-linking two or more antibodies or fragments (see, e.g., US Patent No. 4,676,980, and Brennan et al., *Science*, 229: 81 (1985)); using leucine zippers to produce bi-specific antibodies (see, e.g., Kostelny et al., *J. Immunol.*, 148(5):1547-1553 (1992)); using "diabody" technology for making bispecific antibody fragments (see, e.g., Hollinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 90:6444-6448 (1993)); and using single-chain Fv (sFv) dimers (see, e.g. Gruber et al., *J. Immunol.*, 152:5368 (1994)); and preparing trispecific antibodies as described, e.g., in Tutt et al. *J. Immunol.* 147: 60 (1991).

[00203] Engineered antibodies with three or more functional antigen binding sites, including "Octopus antibodies" or "dual-variable domain immunoglobulins" (DVDs) are also included herein (see, e.g. US 2006/0025576A1, and Wu et al. *Nature Biotechnology* (2007)).

7. Antibody Variants

[00204] In certain embodiments, amino acid sequence variants of the antibodies provided herein are contemplated. For example, it may be desirable to improve the binding affinity and/or other biological properties of the antibody. Amino acid sequence variants of an antibody may be prepared by introducing appropriate modifications into the nucleotide sequence encoding the antibody, or by peptide synthesis. Such modifications include, for example, deletions from, and/or insertions into and/or substitutions of residues within the amino acid sequences of the antibody. Any combination of deletion, insertion, and substitution can be made to arrive at the final construct, provided that the final construct possesses the desired characteristics, e.g., antigen-binding.

a) Substitution, Insertion, and Deletion Variants

[00205] In certain embodiments, antibody variants having one or more amino acid substitutions are provided. Sites of interest for substitutional mutagenesis include the HVRs and FRs. Conservative substitutions are shown in Table 2 under the heading of "preferred substitutions." More substantial changes are provided in Table 2 under the heading of "exemplary substitutions," and as further described below in reference to amino acid side chain classes. Amino acid substitutions may be introduced into an antibody of interest and the products screened for a desired activity, e.g., retained/improved antigen binding, decreased immunogenicity, or improved ADCC or CDC.

TABLE 2

Original Residue	Exemplary Substitutions	Preferred Substitutions
Ala (A)	Val; Leu; Ile	Val
Arg (R)	Lys; Gln; Asn	Lys
Asn (N)	Gln; His; Asp, Lys; Arg	Gln
Asp (D)	Glu; Asn	Glu
Cys (C)	Ser; Ala	Ser
Gln (Q)	Asn; Glu	Asn
Glu (E)	Asp; Gln	Asp
Gly (G)	Ala	Ala
His (H)	Asn; Gln; Lys; Arg	Arg
Ile (I)	Leu; Val; Met; Ala; Phe; Norleucine	Leu
Leu (L)	Norleucine; Ile; Val; Met; Ala; Phe	Ile
Lys (K)	Arg; Gln; Asn	Arg
Met (M)	Leu; Phe; Ile	Leu
Phe (F)	Trp; Leu; Val; Ile; Ala; Tyr	Tyr
Pro (P)	Ala	Ala
Ser (S)	Thr	Thr
Thr (T)	Val; Ser	Ser
Trp (W)	Tyr; Phe	Tyr
Tyr (Y)	Trp; Phe; Thr; Ser	Phe
Val (V)	Ile; Leu; Met; Phe; Ala; Norleucine	Leu

[00206] Amino acids may be grouped according to common side-chain properties:

(1) hydrophobic: Norleucine, Met, Ala, Val, Leu, Ile;

(2) neutral hydrophilic: Cys, Ser, Thr, Asn, Gln;

(3) acidic: Asp, Glu;

(4) basic: His, Lys, Arg;

(5) residues that influence chain orientation: Gly, Pro;

(6) aromatic: Trp, Tyr, Phe.

[00207] Non-conservative substitutions will entail exchanging a member of one of these classes for another class.

[00208] One type of substitutional variant involves substituting one or more hypervariable region residues of a parent antibody (*e.g.* a humanized or human antibody). Generally, the

resulting variant(s) selected for further study will have modifications (e.g., improvements) in certain biological properties (e.g., increased affinity, reduced immunogenicity) relative to the parent antibody and/or will have substantially retained certain biological properties of the parent antibody. An exemplary substitutional variant is an affinity matured antibody, which may be conveniently generated, e.g., using phage display-based affinity maturation techniques such as those described herein. Briefly, one or more HVR residues are mutated and the variant antibodies displayed on phage and screened for a particular biological activity (e.g. binding affinity).

[00209] Alterations (e.g., substitutions) may be made in HVRs, e.g., to improve antibody affinity. Such alterations may be made in HVR "hotspots," i.e., residues encoded by codons that undergo mutation at high frequency during the somatic maturation process (see, e.g., Chowdhury, *Methods Mol. Biol.* 207:179-196 (2008)), and/or residues that contact antigen, with the resulting variant VH or VL being tested for binding affinity. Affinity maturation by constructing and reselecting from secondary libraries has been described, e.g., in Hoogenboom et al. in *Methods in Molecular Biology* 178:1-37 (O'Brien et al., ed., Human Press, Totowa, NJ, (2001).) In some embodiments of affinity maturation, diversity is introduced into the variable genes chosen for maturation by any of a variety of methods (e.g., error-prone PCR, chain shuffling, or oligonucleotide-directed mutagenesis). A secondary library is then created. The library is then screened to identify any antibody variants with the desired affinity. Another method to introduce diversity involves HVR-directed approaches, in which several HVR residues (e.g., 4-6 residues at a time) are randomized. HVR residues involved in antigen binding may be specifically identified, e.g., using alanine scanning mutagenesis or modeling. CDR-H3 and CDR-L3 in particular are often targeted.

[00210] In certain embodiments, substitutions, insertions, or deletions may occur within one or more HVRs so long as such alterations do not substantially reduce the ability of the antibody to bind antigen. For example, conservative alterations (e.g., conservative substitutions as provided herein) that do not substantially reduce binding affinity may be made in HVRs. Such alterations may, for example, be outside of antigen contacting residues in the HVRs. In certain embodiments of the variant VH and VL sequences provided above, each HVR either is unaltered, or contains no more than one, two or three amino acid substitutions.

[00211] A useful method for identification of residues or regions of an antibody that may be targeted for mutagenesis is called "alanine scanning mutagenesis" as described by Cunningham and Wells (1989) *Science*, 244:1081-1085. In this method, a residue or group of target residues (e.g., charged residues such as arg, asp, his, lys, and glu) are identified and replaced by a neutral or negatively charged amino acid (e.g., alanine or polyalanine) to determine whether the interaction of the antibody with antigen is affected. Further substitutions may be introduced at the amino acid

locations demonstrating functional sensitivity to the initial substitutions. Alternatively, or additionally, a crystal structure of an antigen-antibody complex to identify contact points between the antibody and antigen. Such contact residues and neighboring residues may be targeted or eliminated as candidates for substitution. Variants may be screened to determine whether they contain the desired properties.

[00212] Amino acid sequence insertions include amino- and/or carboxyl-terminal fusions ranging in length from one residue to polypeptides containing a hundred or more residues, as well as intrasequence insertions of single or multiple amino acid residues. Examples of terminal insertions include an antibody with an N-terminal methionyl residue. Other insertional variants of the antibody molecule include the fusion to the N- or C-terminus of the antibody to an enzyme (e.g. for ADEPT) or a polypeptide which increases the serum half-life of the antibody.

b) Glycosylation variants

[00213] In certain embodiments, an antibody provided herein is altered to increase or decrease the extent to which the antibody is glycosylated. Addition or deletion of glycosylation sites to an antibody may be conveniently accomplished by altering the amino acid sequence such that one or more glycosylation sites is created or removed.

[00214] Where the antibody comprises an Fc region, the carbohydrate attached thereto may be altered. Native antibodies produced by mammalian cells typically comprise a branched, biantennary oligosaccharide that is generally attached by an N-linkage to Asn297 of the CH2 domain of the Fc region. See, e.g., Wright et al. *TIBTECH* 15:26-32 (1997). The oligosaccharide may include various carbohydrates, e.g., mannose, N-acetyl glucosamine (GlcNAc), galactose, and sialic acid, as well as a fucose attached to a GlcNAc in the "stem" of the biantennary oligosaccharide structure. In some embodiments, modifications of the oligosaccharide in an antibody of the invention may be made in order to create antibody variants with certain improved properties.

[00215] In some embodiments, antibody variants are provided having a carbohydrate structure that lacks fucose attached (directly or indirectly) to an Fc region. For example, the amount of fucose in such antibody may be from 1% to 80%, from 1% to 65%, from 5% to 65% or from 20% to 40%. The amount of fucose is determined by calculating the average amount of fucose within the sugar chain at Asn297, relative to the sum of all glycostructures attached to Asn 297 (e. g. complex, hybrid and high mannose structures) as measured by MALDI-TOF mass spectrometry, as described in WO 2008/077546, for example. Asn297 refers to the asparagine residue located at about position 297 in the Fc region (Eu numbering of Fc region residues); however, Asn297 may also be located about ± 3 amino acids upstream or downstream of position 297, i.e., between positions 294 and 300, due to minor sequence variations in antibodies. Such fucosylation variants

may have improved ADCC function. See, e.g., US Patent Publication Nos. US 2003/0157108 (Presta, L.); US 2004/0093621 (Kyowa Hakko Kogyo Co., Ltd). Examples of publications related to "defucosylated" or "fucose-deficient" antibody variants include: US 2003/0157108; WO 2000/61739; WO 2001/29246; US 2003/0115614; US 2002/0164328; US 2004/0093621; US 2004/0132140; US 2004/0110704; US 2004/0110282; US 2004/0109865; WO 2003/085119; WO 2003/084570; WO 2005/035586; WO 2005/035778; WO2005/053742; WO2002/031140; Okazaki et al. *J. Mol. Biol.* 336:1239-1249 (2004); Yamane-Ohnuki et al. *Biotech. Bioeng.* 87: 614 (2004). Examples of cell lines capable of producing defucosylated antibodies include Lec13 CHO cells deficient in protein fucosylation (Ripka et al. *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.* 249:533-545 (1986); US Pat Appl No US 2003/0157108 A1, Presta, L; and WO 2004/056312 A1, Adams *et al.*, especially at Example 11), and knockout cell lines, such as alpha-1,6-fucosyltransferase gene, *FUT8,* knockout CHO cells (see, e.g., Yamane-Ohnuki et al. *Biotech. Bioeng.* 87: 614 (2004); Kanda, Y. et al., *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 94(4):680-688 (2006); and WO2003/085107).

[00216] Antibodies variants are further provided with bisected oligosaccharides, e.g., in which a biantennary oligosaccharide attached to the Fc region of the antibody is bisected by GlcNAc. Such antibody variants may have reduced fucosylation and/or improved ADCC function. Examples of such antibody variants are described, e.g., in WO 2003/011878 (Jean-Mairet et al.); US Patent No. 6,602,684 (Umana et al.); and US 2005/0123546 (Umana *et al.*). Antibody variants with at least one galactose residue in the oligosaccharide attached to the Fc region are also provided. Such antibody variants may have improved CDC function. Such antibody variants are described, e.g., in WO 1997/30087 (Patel et al.); WO 1998/58964 (Raju, S.); and WO 1999/22764 (Raju, S.).

c) Fc region variants

[00217] In certain embodiments, one or more amino acid modifications may be introduced into the Fc region of an antibody provided herein, thereby generating an Fc region variant. The Fc region variant may comprise a human Fc region sequence (*e.g.*, a human IgG1, IgG2, IgG3 or IgG4 Fc region) comprising an amino acid modification (*e.g.* a substitution) at one or more amino acid positions.

[00218] In certain embodiments, the invention contemplates an antibody variant that possesses some but not all effector functions, which make it a desirable candidate for applications in which the half life of the antibody *in vivo* is important yet certain effector functions (such as complement and ADCC) are unnecessary or deleterious. *In vitro* and/or *in vivo* cytotoxicity assays can be conducted to confirm the reduction/depletion of CDC and/or ADCC activities. For example, Fc receptor (FcR) binding assays can be conducted to ensure that the antibody lacks FcγR binding (hence likely lacking ADCC activity), but retains FcRn binding ability. The primary cells for mediating ADCC, NK cells, express Fc(RIII only, whereas monocytes express Fc(RI, Fc(RII and

Fc(RIII. FcR expression on hematopoietic cells is summarized in Table 3 on page 464 of Ravetch and Kinet, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 9:457-492 (1991). Non-limiting examples of *in vitro* assays to assess ADCC activity of a molecule of interest is described in U.S. Patent No. 5,500,362 (see, e.g. Hellstrom, I. et al. *Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA* 83:7059-7063 (1986)) and Hellstrom, I et al., *Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA* 82:1499-1502 (1985); 5,821,337 (see Bruggemann, M. et al., *J. Exp. Med.* 166:1351-1361 (1987)). Alternatively, non-radioactive assays methods may be employed (see, for example, ACTI™ non-radioactive cytotoxicity assay for flow cytometry (CellTechnology, Inc. Mountain View, CA; and CytoTox 96® non-radioactive cytotoxicity assay (Promega, Madison, WI). Useful effector cells for such assays include peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) and Natural Killer (NK) cells. Alternatively, or additionally, ADCC activity of the molecule of interest may be assessed *in vivo*, *e.g.*, in a animal model such as that disclosed in Clynes et al. *Proc. Nat'l Acad. Sci. USA* 95:652-656 (1998). C1q binding assays may also be carried out to confirm that the antibody is unable to bind C1q and hence lacks CDC activity. See, e.g., C1q and C3c binding ELISA in WO 2006/029879 and WO 2005/100402. To assess complement activation, a CDC assay may be performed (see, for example, Gazzano-Santoro *et al.*, *J. Immunol. Methods* 202:163 (1996); Cragg, M.S. et al., *Blood* 101:1045-1052 (2003); and Cragg, M.S. and M.J. Glennie, *Blood* 103:2738-2743 (2004)). FcRn binding and *in vivo* clearance/half life determinations can also be performed using methods known in the art (see, e.g., Petkova, S.B. et al., *Int'l. Immunol.* 18(12):1759-1769 (2006)).

[00219] Non-limiting examples of antibodies with reduced effector function include those with substitution of one or more of Fc region residues 238, 265, 269, 270, 297, 327 and 329 (U.S. Patent No. 6,737,056). Such Fc mutants include Fc mutants with substitutions at two or more of amino acid positions 265, 269, 270, 297 and 327, including the so-called "DANA" Fc mutant with substitution of residues 265 and 297 to alanine (US Patent No. 7,332,581).

[00220] Certain antibody variants with improved or diminished binding to FcRs are described. (See, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 6,737,056; WO 2004/056312, and Shields et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 9(2): 6591-6604 (2001).)

[00221] In certain embodiments, an antibody variant comprises an Fc region with one or more amino acid substitutions which improve ADCC, e.g., substitutions at positions 298, 333, and/or 334 of the Fc region (EU numbering of residues).

[00222] In some embodiments, alterations are made in the Fc region that result in altered (*i.e.*, either improved or diminished) C1q binding and/or Complement Dependent Cytotoxicity (CDC), e.g., as described in US Patent No. 6,194,551, WO 99/51642, and Idusogie et al. *J. Immunol.* 164: 4178-4184 (2000).

[00223] Antibodies with increased half lives and improved binding to the neonatal Fc receptor (FcRn), which is responsible for the transfer of maternal IgGs to the fetus (Guyer et al., *J. Immunol.* 117:587 (1976) and Kim et al., *J. Immunol.* 24:249 (1994)), are described in US2005/0014934A1 (Hinton et al.). Those antibodies comprise an Fc region with one or more substitutions therein which improve binding of the Fc region to FcRn. Such, non-limiting, Fc variants include those with substitutions at one or more of Fc region residues: 238, 256, 265, 272, 286, 303, 305, 307, 311, 312, 317, 340, 356, 360, 362, 376, 378, 380, 382, 413, 424 or 434, e.g., substitution of Fc region residue 434 (US Patent No. 7,371,826).

[00224] See also Duncan & Winter, *Nature* 322:738-40 (1988); U.S. Patent No. 5,648,260; U.S. Patent No. 5,624,821; and WO 94/29351 concerning other examples of Fc region variants.

d) Cysteine engineered antibody variants

[00225] In certain embodiments, it may be desirable to create cysteine engineered antibodies, e.g., "thioMAbs," in which one or more residues of an antibody are substituted with cysteine residues. In particular embodiments, the substituted residues occur at accessible sites of the antibody. By substituting those residues with cysteine, reactive thiol groups are thereby positioned at accessible sites of the antibody and may be used to conjugate the antibody to other moieties, such as drug moieties or linker-drug moieties, to create an immunoconjugate, as described further herein. In certain embodiments, any one or more of the following residues may be substituted with cysteine: V205 (Kabat numbering) of the light chain; A118 (EU numbering) of the heavy chain; and S400 (EU numbering) of the heavy chain Fc region. Cysteine engineered antibodies may be generated as described, e.g., in U.S. Patent No. 7,521,541.

e) Antibody Derivatives

[00226] In certain embodiments, an antibody provided herein may be further modified to contain additional nonproteinaceous moieties that are known in the art and readily available. The moieties suitable for derivatization of the antibody include but are not limited to water soluble polymers. Non-limiting examples of water soluble polymers include, but are not limited to, polyethylene glycol (PEG), copolymers of ethylene glycol/propylene glycol, carboxymethylcellulose, dextran, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, poly-1, 3-dioxolane, poly-1,3,6-trioxane, ethylene/maleic anhydride copolymer, polyaminoacids (either homopolymers or random copolymers), and dextran or poly(n-vinyl pyrrolidone)polyethylene glycol, propropylene glycol homopolymers, prolypropylene oxide/ethylene oxide co-polymers, polyoxyethylated polyols (e.g., glycerol), polyvinyl alcohol, and mixtures thereof. Polyethylene glycol propionaldehyde may have advantages in manufacturing due to its stability in water. The polymer may be of any molecular weight, and may be branched or unbranched. The number of

polymers attached to the antibody may vary, and if more than one polymer are attached, they can be the same or different molecules. In general, the number and/or type of polymers used for derivatization can be determined based on considerations including, but not limited to, the particular properties or functions of the antibody to be improved, whether the antibody derivative will be used in a therapy under defined conditions, etc.

[00227] In another embodiment, conjugates of an antibody and nonproteinaceous moiety that may be selectively heated by exposure to radiation are provided. In some embodiments, the nonproteinaceous moiety is a carbon nanotube (Kam et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 102: 11600-11605 (2005)). The radiation may be of any wavelength, and includes, but is not limited to, wavelengths that do not harm ordinary cells, but which heat the nonproteinaceous moiety to a temperature at which cells proximal to the antibody-nonproteinaceous moiety are killed.

B. Recombinant Methods and Compositions

[00228] Antibodies may be produced using recombinant methods and compositions, e.g., as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,816,567. In some embodiments, isolated nucleic acid encoding an anti-TfR antibody described herein is provided. Such nucleic acid may encode an amino acid sequence comprising the VL and/or an amino acid sequence comprising the VH of the antibody (e.g., the light and/or heavy chains of the antibody). In a further embodiment, one or more vectors (e.g., expression vectors) comprising such nucleic acid are provided. In a further embodiment, a host cell comprising such nucleic acid is provided. In one such embodiment, a host cell comprises (e.g., has been transformed with): (1) a vector comprising a nucleic acid that encodes an amino acid sequence comprising the VL of the antibody and an amino acid sequence comprising the VH of the antibody, or (2) a first vector comprising a nucleic acid that encodes an amino acid sequence comprising the VL of the antibody and a second vector comprising a nucleic acid that encodes an amino acid sequence comprising the VH of the antibody. In some embodiments, the host cell is eukaryotic, e.g. a Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO) cell or lymphoid cell (e.g., Y0, NS0, Sp20 cell). In some embodiments, a method of making an anti-TfR antibody is provided, wherein the method comprises culturing a host cell comprising a nucleic acid encoding the antibody, as provided above, under conditions suitable for expression of the antibody, and optionally recovering the antibody from the host cell (or host cell culture medium).

[00229] For recombinant production of an anti-TfR antibody, nucleic acid encoding an antibody, e.g., as described above, is isolated and inserted into one or more vectors for further cloning and/or expression in a host cell. Such nucleic acid may be readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of the antibody).

[00230] Suitable host cells for cloning or expression of antibody-encoding vectors include prokaryotic or eukaryotic cells described herein. For example, antibodies may be produced in bacteria, in particular when glycosylation and Fc effector function are not needed. For expression of antibody fragments and polypeptides in bacteria, see, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 5,648,237, 5,789,199, and 5,840,523. (See also Charlton, *Methods in Molecular Biology, Vol. 248* (B.K.C. Lo, ed., Humana Press, Totowa, NJ, 2003), pp. 245-254, describing expression of antibody fragments in *E. coli*.) After expression, the antibody may be isolated from the bacterial cell paste in a soluble fraction and can be further purified.

[00231] In addition to prokaryotes, eukaryotic microbes such as filamentous fungi or yeast are suitable cloning or expression hosts for antibody-encoding vectors, including fungi and yeast strains whose glycosylation pathways have been "humanized," resulting in the production of an antibody with a partially or fully human glycosylation pattern. See Gerngross, *Nat. Biotech.* 22:1409-1414 (2004), and Li et al., *Nat. Biotech.* 24:210-215 (2006).

[00232] Suitable host cells for the expression of glycosylated antibody are also derived from multicellular organisms (invertebrates and vertebrates). Examples of invertebrate cells include plant and insect cells. Numerous baculoviral strains have been identified which may be used in conjunction with insect cells, particularly for transfection of *Spodoptera frugiperda* cells.

[00233] Plant cell cultures can also be utilized as hosts. *See,* e.g., US Patent Nos. 5,959,177, 6,040,498, 6,420,548, 7,125,978, and 6,417,429 (describing PLANTIBODIES™ technology for producing antibodies in transgenic plants).

[00234] Vertebrate cells may also be used as hosts. For example, mammalian cell lines that are adapted to grow in suspension may be useful. Other examples of useful mammalian host cell lines are monkey kidney CV1 line transformed by SV40 (COS-7); human embryonic kidney line (293 or 293 cells as described, e.g., in Graham et al., *J. Gen Virol.* 36:59 (1977)); baby hamster kidney cells (BHK); mouse sertoli cells (TM4 cells as described, e.g., in Mather, *Biol. Reprod.* 23:243-251 (1980)); monkey kidney cells (CV1); African green monkey kidney cells (VERO-76); human cervical carcinoma cells (HELA); canine kidney cells (MDCK; buffalo rat liver cells (BRL 3A); human lung cells (W138); human liver cells (Hep G2); mouse mammary tumor (MMT 060562); TRI cells, as described, e.g., in Mather et al., *Annals N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 383:44-68 (1982); MRC 5 cells; and FS4 cells. Other useful mammalian host cell lines include Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells, including $DHFR^-$ CHO cells (Urlaub et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 77:4216 (1980)); and myeloma cell lines such as Y0, NS0 and Sp2/0. For a review of certain mammalian host cell lines suitable for antibody production, see, e.g., Yazaki and Wu, *Methods in Molecular Biology, Vol. 248* (B.K.C. Lo, ed., Humana Press, Totowa, NJ), pp. 255-268 (2003).

C. Assays

[00235] Anti-TfR antibodies provided herein may be identified, screened for, or characterized for their physical/chemical properties and/or biological activities by various assays known in the art.

1. Binding assays and other assays

[00236] Various techniques are available for determining binding of the antibody to the TfR. One such assay is an enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for confirming an ability to bind to human TfR (and brain antigen). According to this assay, plates coated with antigen (e.g. recombinant TfR) are incubated with a sample comprising the anti-TfR antibody and binding of the antibody to the antigen of interest is determined.

[00237] In some aspects, an antibody of the invention is tested for its antigen binding activity, e.g., by known methods such as ELISA, Western blot, etc.

[00238] In another aspect, competition assays may be used to identify an antibody that competes with any of the antibodies of the invention for binding to TfR. In certain embodiments, such a competing antibody binds to the same epitope (e.g., a linear or a conformational epitope) that is bound by any of the antibodies of the invention, more specifically, any of the epitopes specifically bound by antibodies in class I, class II, class III or class IV as described herein (see, e.g., Example 1 and Table 4. Detailed exemplary methods for mapping an epitope to which an antibody binds are provided in Morris (1996) "Epitope Mapping Protocols," in *Methods in Molecular Biology* vol. 66 (Humana Press, Totowa, NJ).

[00239] In an exemplary competition assay, immobilized TfR is incubated in a solution comprising a first labeled antibody that binds to TfR (e.g., one or more of the antibodies disclosed herein) and a second unlabeled antibody that is being tested for its ability to compete with the first antibody for binding to TfR. The second antibody may be present in a hybridoma supernatant. As a control, immobilized TfR is incubated in a solution comprising the first labeled antibody but not the second unlabeled antibody. After incubation under conditions permissive for binding of the first antibody to TfR, excess unbound antibody is removed, and the amount of label associated with immobilized TfR is measured. If the amount of label associated with immobilized TfR is substantially reduced in the test sample relative to the control sample, then that indicates that the second antibody is competing with the first antibody for binding to TfR. See Harlow and Lane (1988) *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual* ch.14 (Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, NY).

2. *Activity assays*

[00240] In some aspects, assays are provided for identifying anti-TfR antibodies thereof having biological activity. Biological activity may include, e.g., transporting a compound associated with/conjugated to the antibody across the BBB into the brain and/or CNS. Antibodies having such biological activity in vivo and/or in vitro are also provided.

[00241] In certain embodiments, an antibody of the invention is tested for such biological activity.

D. Immunoconjugates

[00242] The invention also provides immunoconjugates comprising an anti-TfR antibody herein conjugated to one or more cytotoxic agents, such as chemotherapeutic agents or drugs, growth inhibitory agents, toxins (e.g., protein toxins, enzymatically active toxins of bacterial, fungal, plant, or animal origin, or fragments thereof), or radioactive isotopes.

[00243] In some embodiments, the anti-TfR antibody herein is coupled with a neurological disorder drug, a chemotherapeutic agent and/or an imaging agent in order to more efficiently transport the drug, chemotherapeutic agent and/or the imaging agent across the BBB.

[00244] Covalent conjugation can either be direct or via a linker. In certain embodiments, direct conjugation is by construction of a protein fusion (i.e., by genetic fusion of the two genes encoding the anti-TfR antibody and e.g., the neurological disorder drug and expression as a single protein). In certain embodiments, direct conjugation is by formation of a covalent bond between a reactive group on one of the two portions of the anti-TfR antibody and a corresponding group or acceptor on the, e.g., neurological drug. In certain embodiments, direct conjugation is by modification (i.e., genetic modification) of one of the two molecules to be conjugated to include a reactive group (as nonlimiting examples, a sulfhydryl group or a carboxyl group) that forms a covalent attachment to the other molecule to be conjugated under appropriate conditions. As one nonlimiting example, a molecule (i.e., an amino acid) with a desired reactive group (i.e., a cysteine residue) may be introduced into the anti-TfR antibody and a disulfide bond formed with the e.g., neurological drug. Methods for covalent conjugation of nucleic acids to proteins are also known in the art (i.e., photocrosslinking, see, e.g., Zatsepin et al. *Russ. Chem.* Rev. 74: 77-95 (2005))

[00245] Non-covalent conjugation can be by any nonconvalent attachment means, including hydrophobic bonds, ionic bonds, electrostatic interactions, and the like, as will be readily understood by one of ordinary skill in the art.

[00246] Conjugation may also be performed using a variety of linkers. For example, an anti-TfR antibody and a neurological drug may be conjugated using a variety of bifunctional protein coupling agents such as N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithio) propionate (SPDP), succinimidyl-4-

(N-maleimidomethyl) cyclohexane-1-carboxylate (SMCC), iminothiolane (IT), bifunctional derivatives of imidoesters (such as dimethyl adipimidate HCl), active esters (such as disuccinimidyl suberate), aldehydes (such as glutaraldehyde), bis-azido compounds (such as bis (p-azidobenzoyl) hexanediamine), bis-diazonium derivatives (such as bis-(p-diazoniumbenzoyl)-ethylenediamine), diisocyanates (such as toluene 2,6-diisocyanate), and bis-active fluorine compounds (such as 1,5-difluoro-2,4-dinitrobenzene). For example, a ricin immunotoxin can be prepared as described in Vitetta et al., *Science* 238:1098 (1987). Carbon-14-labeled 1-isothiocyanatobenzyl-3-methyldiethylene triaminepentaacetic acid (MX-DTPA) is an exemplary chelating agent for conjugation of radionucleotide to the antibody. See WO94/11026. Peptide linkers, comprised of from one to twenty amino acids joined by peptide bonds, may also be used. In certain such embodiments, the amino acids are selected from the twenty naturally-occurring amino acids. In certain other such embodiments, one or more of the amino acids are selected from glycine, alanine, proline, asparagine, glutamine and lysine. The linker may be a "cleavable linker" facilitating release of the neurological drug upon delivery to the brain. For example, an acid-labile linker, peptidase-sensitive linker, photolabile linker, dimethyl linker or disulfide-containing linker (Chari et al., *Cancer Res.* 52:127-131 (1992); U.S. Patent No. 5,208,020) may be used.

[00247] The invention herein expressly contemplates, but is not limited to, conjugates prepared with cross-linker reagents including, but not limited to, BMPS, EMCS, GMBS, HBVS, LC-SMCC, MBS, MPBH, SBAP, SIA, SIAB, SMCC, SMPB, SMPH, sulfo-EMCS, sulfo-GMBS, sulfo-KMUS, sulfo-MBS, sulfo-SIAB, sulfo-SMCC, and sulfo-SMPB, and SVSB (succinimidyl-(4-vinylsulfone)benzoate) which are commercially available (e.g., from Pierce Biotechnology, Inc., Rockford, IL., U.S.A).

[00248] In some embodiments, an immunoconjugate is an antibody-drug conjugate (ADC) in which an antibody is conjugated to one or more drugs, including but not limited to a maytansinoid (see U.S. Patent Nos. 5,208,020, 5,416,064 and European Patent EP 0 425 235 B1); an auristatin such as monomethylauristatin drug moieties DE and DF (MMAE and MMAF) (see U.S. Patent Nos. 5,635,483 and 5,780,588, and 7,498,298); a dolastatin; a calicheamicin or derivative thereof (see U.S. Patent Nos. 5,712,374, 5,714,586, 5,739,116, 5,767,285, 5,770,701, 5,770,710, 5,773,001, and 5,877,296; Hinman et al., *Cancer Res.* 53:3336-3342 (1993); and Lode et al., *Cancer Res.* 58:2925-2928 (1998)); an anthracycline such as daunomycin or doxorubicin (see Kratz et al., *Current Med. Chem.* 13:477-523 (2006); Jeffrey et al., *Bioorganic & Med. Chem. Letters* 16:358-362 (2006); Torgov et al., *Bioconj. Chem.* 16:717-721 (2005); Nagy et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 97:829-834 (2000); Dubowchik et al., *Bioorg. & Med. Chem. Letters* 12:1529-1532 (2002); King et al., *J. Med. Chem.* 45:4336-4343 (2002); and U.S. Patent No.

6,630,579); methotrexate; vindesine; a taxane such as docetaxel, paclitaxel, larotaxel, tesetaxel, and ortataxel; a trichothecene; and CC1065.

[00249] In another embodiment, an immunoconjugate comprises an antibody as described herein conjugated to an enzymatically active toxin or fragment thereof, including but not limited to diphtheria A chain, nonbinding active fragments of diphtheria toxin, exotoxin A chain (from Pseudomonas aeruginosa), ricin A chain, abrin A chain, modeccin A chain, alpha-sarcin, Aleurites fordii proteins, dianthin proteins, Phytolaca americana proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), momordica charantia inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, gelonin, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin, and the tricothecenes.

[00250] In another embodiment, an immunoconjugate comprises an antibody as described herein conjugated to a radioactive atom to form a radioconjugate. A variety of radioactive isotopes are available for the production of radioconjugates. Examples include At^{211}, I^{131}, I^{125}, Y^{90}, Re^{186}, Re^{188}, Sm^{153}, Bi^{212}, P^{32}, Pb^{212} and radioactive isotopes of Lu. When the radioconjugate is used for detection, it may comprise a radioactive atom for scintigraphic studies, for example tc99m or I123, or a spin label for nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) imaging (also known as magnetic resonance imaging, mri), such as iodine-123 again, iodine-131, indium-111, fluorine-19, carbon-13, nitrogen-15, oxygen-17, gadolinium, manganese or iron.

E. Methods and Compositions for Diagnostics and Detection

[00251] In certain embodiments, any of the anti-TfR antibodies provided herein is useful for detecting the presence of TfR in a biological sample. The term "detecting" as used herein encompasses quantitative or qualitative detection. In certain embodiments, a biological sample comprises a cell or tissue, such as blood (i.e., immature red blood cells), CSF, and BBB-containing tissue.

[00252] In some embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody for use in a method of diagnosis or detection is provided. In a further aspect, a method of detecting the presence of TfR in a biological sample is provided. In certain embodiments, the method comprises contacting the biological sample with an anti-TfR antibody as described herein under conditions permissive for binding of the anti-TfR antibody to TfR, and detecting whether a complex is formed between the anti-TfR antibody and TfR. Such method may be an *in vitro* or *in vivo* method. In some embodiments, an anti-TfR antibody is used to select subjects eligible for therapy with an anti-TfR antibody, e.g. where TfR is a biomarker for selection of patients.

[00253] Exemplary disorders that may be diagnosed using an antibody of the invention includedisorders involving immature red blood cells, due to the fact that TfR is expressed in reticulocytes and is therefore detectable by any of the antibodies of the invention. Such disorders include anemia and other disorders arising from reduced levels of reticulocytes, or congenital

polycythemia or neoplastic polycythemia vera, where raised red blood cell counts due to hyperproliferation of, e.g., reticulocytes, results in thickening of blood and concomitant physiological symptoms. .

[00254] In certain embodiments, labeled anti-TfR antibodies are provided. Labels include, but are not limited to, labels or moieties that are detected directly (such as fluorescent, chromophoric, electron-dense, chemiluminescent, and radioactive labels), as well as moieties, such as enzymes or ligands, that are detected indirectly, e.g., through an enzymatic reaction or molecular interaction. Exemplary labels include, but are not limited to, the radioisotopes ^{32}P, ^{14}C, ^{125}I, ^{3}H, and ^{131}I, fluorophores such as rare earth chelates or fluorescein and its derivatives, rhodamine and its derivatives, dansyl, umbelliferone, luceriferases, e.g., firefly luciferase and bacterial luciferase (U.S. Patent No. 4,737,456), luciferin, 2,3-dihydrophthalazinediones, horseradish peroxidase (HRP), alkaline phosphatase, β-galactosidase, glucoamylase, lysozyme, saccharide oxidases, e.g., glucose oxidase, galactose oxidase, and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, heterocyclic oxidases such as uricase and xanthine oxidase, coupled with an enzyme that employs hydrogen peroxide to oxidize a dye precursor such as HRP, lactoperoxidase, or microperoxidase, biotin/avidin, spin labels, bacteriophage labels, stable free radicals, and the like.

[00255] In some embodiments, the intact antibody lacks effector function. In another embodiment, the inact antibody has reduced effector function. In another embodiment, the intact antibody is engineered to have reduced effector function. In some aspects, the antibody is a Fab. In another aspect, the antibody has one or more Fc mutations reducing or eliminating effector function. In another aspect, the antibody has modified glycosylation due, e.g., to producing the antibody in a system lacking normal human glycosylation enzymes. In another aspect, the Ig backbone is modified to one which naturally possesses limited or no effector function.

[00256] Various techniques are available for determining binding of the antibody to the TfR. One such assay is an enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) for confirming an ability to bind to human TfR (and brain antigen). According to this assay, plates coated with antigen (e.g. recombinant TfR) are incubated with a sample comprising the anti-TfR antibody and binding of the antibody to the antigen of interest is determined.

[00257] Assays for evaluating uptake of systemically administered antibody and other biological activity of the antibody can be performed as disclosed in the examples or as known for the anti-CNS antigen antibody of interest.

[00258] In some aspects, assays are provided for identifying anti-TfR antibodies conjugated (either covalently or non-covalently) to anti-BACE1 antibodies having biological activity. Biological activity may include, e.g., inhibition of BACE1 aspartyl protease activity. Antibodies having such biological activity *in vivo* and/or *in vitro* are also provided, e.g. as evaluated by

homogeneous time-resolved fluorescence HTRF assay or a microfluidic capillary electrophoretic (MCE) assay using synthetic substrate peptides, or *in vivo* in cell lines which express BACE1 substrates such as APP.

F. Pharmaceutical Formulations

[00259] Pharmaceutical formulations of an anti-TfR as described herein are prepared by mixing such antibody having the desired degree of purity with one or more optional pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients or stabilizers (*Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980)), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are generally nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and include, but are not limited to: buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrins; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (*e.g.* Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as polyethylene glycol (PEG). Exemplary pharmaceutically acceptable carriers herein further include insterstitial drug dispersion agents such as soluble neutral-active hyaluronidase glycoproteins (sHASEGP), for example, human soluble PH-20 hyaluronidase glycoproteins, such as rHuPH20 (HYLENEX®, Baxter International, Inc.). Certain exemplary sHASEGPs and methods of use, including rHuPH20, are described in US Patent Publication Nos. 2005/0260186 and 2006/0104968. In some aspects, a sHASEGP is combined with one or more additional glycosaminoglycanases such as chondroitinases.

[00260] Exemplary lyophilized antibody formulations are described in US Patent No. 6,267,958. Aqueous antibody formulations include those described in US Patent No. 6,171,586 and WO2006/044908, the latter formulations including a histidine-acetate buffer.

[00261] The formulation herein may also contain more than one active ingredient as necessary for the particular indication being treated, preferably those with complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, it may be desirable to further provide one or more active ingredients for treating a neuropathy disorder, a neurodegenerative disease, cancer, an ocular disease disorder, a seizure disorder, a lysosomal storage disease, an amyloidosis, a viral or

microbial disease, ischemia, a behavioral disorder or CNS inflammation. Exemplary such medicaments are discussed hereinbelow. Such active ingredients are suitably present in combination in amounts that are effective for the purpose intended.

[00262] Active ingredients may be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in, for example, *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences* 16th edition, Osol, A. Ed. (1980). One or more active ingredients may be encapsulated in liposomes that are coupled to anti-TfR antibodies described herein (*see e.g.*, U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 20020025313).

[00263] Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semi-permeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, *e.g.* films, or microcapsules. Nonlimiting examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or poly(vinylalcohol)), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and γ ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT™ (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), and poly-D-(-)-3-hydroxybutyric acid.

[00264] The formulations to be used for *in* vivo administration are generally sterile. Sterility may be readily accomplished, e.g., by filtration through sterile filtration membranes.

G. Therapeutic Methods and Compositions

[00265] Any of the anti-TfR antibodies provided herein may be used in therapeutic methods. In some aspects, an anti-TfR antibody for use as a medicament is provided. For example, the invention provides a method of transporting a therapeutic compound across the blood-brain barrier with reduced or eliminated impact on red blood cell populations comprising exposing the anti-TfR antibody coupled to a therapeutic compound (e.g. a multispecific antibody which binds both the TfR and a brain antigen) to the BBB such that the antibody transports the therapeutic compound coupled thereto across the BBB. In another example, the invention provides a method of transporting a neurological disorder drug across the blood-brain barrier comprising exposing an anti-TfR antibody of the invention coupled to a brain disorder drug (e.g. a multispecific antibody which binds both the TfR and a brain antigen) to the BBB such that the antibody transports the neurological disorder drug coupled thereto across the BBB with reduced or eliminated impact on red blood cell populations. In some embodiments, the BBB is in a mammal (e.g. a human), e.g.

one which has a neurological disorder, including, without limitation: Alzheimer's disease (AD), stroke, dementia, muscular dystrophy (MD), multiple sclerosis (MS), amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), cystic fibrosis, Angelman's syndrome, Liddle syndrome, Parkinson's disease, Pick's disease, Paget's disease, cancer, traumatic brain injury, etc.

[00266] In some embodiments, the neurological disorder is selected from: a neuropathy, an amyloidosis, cancer (e.g. involving the CNS or brain), an ocular disease or disorder, a viral or microbial infection, inflammation (e.g. of the CNS or brain), ischemia, neurodegenerative disease, seizure, behavioral disorder, lysosomal storage disease, etc. The antibodies of the invention are particularly suited to treatment of such neurological disorders due to their ability to transport one or more associated active ingredients/coupled therapeutic compounds across the BBB and into the CNS/brain where such disorders find their molecular, cellular, or viral/microbial basis.

[00267] Neuropathy disorders are diseases or abnormalities of the nervous system characterized by inappropriate or uncontrolled nerve signaling or lack thereof, and include, but are not limited to, chronic pain (including nociceptive pain), pain caused by an injury to body tissues, including cancer-related pain, neuropathic pain (pain caused by abnormalities in the nerves, spinal cord, or brain), and psychogenic pain (entirely or mostly related to a psychological disorder), headache, migraine, neuropathy, and symptoms and syndromes often accompanying such neuropathy disorders such as vertigo or nausea.

[00268] For a neuropathy disorder, a neurological drug may be selected that is an analgesic including, but not limited to, a narcotic/opioid analgesic (i.e., morphine, fentanyl, hydrocodone, meperidine, methadone, oxymorphone, pentazocine, propoxyphene, tramadol, codeine and oxycodone), a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) (i.e., ibuprofen, naproxen, diclofenac, diflunisal, etodolac, fenoprofen, flurbiprofen, indomethacin, ketorolac, mefenamic acid, meloxicam, nabumetone, oxaprozin, piroxicam, sulindac, and tolmetin), a corticosteroid (i.e., cortisone, prednisone, prednisolone, dexamethasone, methylprednisolone and triamcinolone), an anti-migraine agent (i.e., sumatriptin, almotriptan, frovatriptan, sumatriptan, rizatriptan, eletriptan, zolmitriptan, dihydroergotamine, eletriptan and ergotamine), acetaminophen, a salicylate (i.e., aspirin, choline salicylate, magnesium salicylate, diflunisal, and salsalate), a anti-convulsant (i.e., carbamazepine, clonazepam, gabapentin, lamotrigine, pregabalin, tiagabine, and topiramate), an anaesthetic (i.e., isoflurane, trichloroethylene, halothane, sevoflurane, benzocaine, chloroprocaine, cocaine, cyclomethycaine, dimethocaine, propoxycaine, procaine, novocaine, proparacaine, tetracaine, articaine, bupivacaine, carticaine, cinchocaine, etidocaine, levobupivacaine, lidocaine, mepivacaine, piperocaine, prilocaine, ropivacaine, trimecaine, saxitoxin and tetrodotoxin), and a cox-2-inhibitor (i.e., celecoxib, rofecoxib, and valdecoxib). For a neuropathy disorder with vertigo involvement, a neurological drug may be selected that is an anti-vertigo agent including, but not

limited to, meclizine, diphenhydramine, promethazine and diazepam. For a neuropathy disorder with nausea involvement, a neurological drug may be selected that is an anti-nausea agent including, but not limited to, promethazine, chlorpromazine, prochlorperazine, trimethobenzamide, and metoclopramide.

[00269] Amyloidoses are a group of diseases and disorders associated with extracellular proteinaceous deposits in the CNS, including, but not limited to, secondary amyloidosis, age-related amyloidosis, Alzheimer's Disease (AD), mild cognitive impairment (MCI), Lewy body dementia, Down's syndrome, hereditary cerebral hemorrhage with amyloidosis (Dutch type); the Guam Parkinson-Dementia complex, cerebral amyloid angiopathy, Huntington's disease, progressive supranuclear palsy, multiple sclerosis; Creutzfeld Jacob disease, Parkinson's disease, transmissible spongiform encephalopathy, HIV-related dementia, amyotropic lateral sclerosis (ALS), inclusion-body myositis (IBM), and ocular diseases relating to beta-amyloid deposition (i.e., macular degeneration, drusen-related optic neuropathy, and cataract).

[00270] For amyloidosis, a neurological drug may be selected that includes, but is not limited to, an antibody or other binding molecule (including, but not limited to a small molecule, a peptide, an aptamer, or other protein binder) that specifically binds to a target selected from: beta secretase, tau, presenilin, amyloid precursor protein or portions thereof, amyloid beta peptide or oligomers or fibrils thereof, death receptor 6 (DR6), receptor for advanced glycation endproducts (RAGE), parkin, and huntingtin; a cholinesterase inhibitor (i.e., galantamine, donepezil, rivastigmine and tacrine); an NMDA receptor antagonist (i.e., memantine), a monoamine depletor (i.e., tetrabenazine); an ergoloid mesylate; an anticholinergic antiparkinsonism agent (i.e., procyclidine, diphenhydramine, trihexylphenidyl, benztropine, biperiden and trihexyphenidyl); a dopaminergic antiparkinsonism agent (i.e., entacapone, selegiline, pramipexole, bromocriptine, rotigotine, selegiline, ropinirole, rasagiline, apomorphine, carbidopa, levodopa, pergolide, tolcapone and amantadine); a tetrabenazine; an anti-inflammatory (including, but not limited to, a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (i.e., indomethicin and other compounds listed above); a hormone (i.e., estrogen, progesterone and leuprolide); a vitamin (i.e., folate and nicotinamide); a dimebolin; a homotaurine (i.e., 3-aminopropanesulfonic acid; 3APS); a serotonin receptor activity modulator (i.e., xaliproden); an, an interferon, and a glucocorticoid.

[00271] Cancers of the CNS are characterized by aberrant proliferation of one or more CNS cell (i.e., a neural cell) and include, but are not limited to, glioma, glioblastoma multiforme, meningioma, astrocytoma, acoustic neuroma, chondroma, oligodendroglioma, medulloblastomas, ganglioglioma, Schwannoma, neurofibroma, neuroblastoma, and extradural, intramedullary or intradural tumors.

[00272] For cancer, a neurological drug may be selected that is a chemotherapeutic agent. Examples of chemotherapeutic agents include alkylating agents such as thiotepa and CYTOXAN® cyclosphosphamide; alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramide, triethiylenethiophosphoramide and trimethylolomelamine; acetogenins (especially bullatacin and bullatacinone); delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (dronabinol, MARINOL®); beta-lapachone; lapachol; colchicines; betulinic acid; a camptothecin (including the synthetic analogue topotecan (HYCAMTIN®), CPT-11 (irinotecan, CAMPTOSAR®), acetylcamptothecin, scopolectin, and 9-aminocamptothecin); bryostatin; callystatin; CC-1065 (including its adozelesin, carzelesin and bizelesin synthetic analogues); podophyllotoxin; podophyllinic acid; teniposide; cryptophycins (particularly cryptophycin 1 and cryptophycin 8); dolastatin; duocarmycin (including the synthetic analogues, KW-2189 and CB1-TM1); eleutherobin; pancratistatin; a sarcodictyin; spongistatin; nitrogen mustards such as chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, and ranimnustine; antibiotics such as the enediyne antibiotics (e. g., calicheamicin, especially calicheamicin gamma1I and calicheamicin omegaI1 (see, e.g., Agnew, Chem Intl. Ed. Engl., 33: 183-186 (1994)); dynemicin, including dynemicin A; an esperamicin; as well as neocarzinostatin chromophore and related chromoprotein enediyne antiobiotic chromophores), aclacinomysins, actinomycin, authramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, carabicin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycinis, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, ADRIAMYCIN® doxorubicin (including morpholino-doxorubicin, cyanomorpholino-doxorubicin, 2-pyrrolino-doxorubicin and deoxydoxorubicin), epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins such as mitomycin C, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti-metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiostane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; eniluracil; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfornithine;

elliptinium acetate; an epothilone; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidainine; maytansinoids such as maytansine and ansamitocins; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidanmol; nitraerine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; losoxantrone; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; PSK® polysaccharide complex (JHS Natural Products, Eugene, OR); razoxane; rhizoxin; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; trichothecenes (especially T-2 toxin, verracurin A, roridin A and anguidine); urethan; vindesine (ELDISINE®, FILDESIN®); dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside ("Ara-C"); thiotepa; taxoids, e.g., TAXOL® paclitaxel (Bristol-Myers Squibb Oncology, Princeton, N.J.), ABRAXANETM Cremophor-free, albumin-engineered nanoparticle formulation of paclitaxel (American Pharmaceutical Partners, Schaumberg, Illinois), and TAXOTERE® doxetaxel (Rhône-Poulenc Rorer, Antony, France); chloranbucil; gemcitabine (GEMZAR®); 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine (VELBAN®); platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitoxantrone; vincristine (ONCOVIN®); oxaliplatin; leucovovin; vinorelbine (NAVELBINE®); novantrone; edatrexate; daunomycin; aminopterin; ibandronate; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluorometlhylornithine (DMFO); retinoids such as retinoic acid; capecitabine (XELODA®); pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above; as well as combinations of two or more of the above such as CHOP, an abbreviation for a combined therapy of cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and prednisolone, and FOLFOX, an abbreviation for a treatment regimen with oxaliplatin (ELOXATINTM) combined with 5-FU and leucovovin.

[00273] Also included in this definition of chemotherapeutic agents are anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate, reduce, block, or inhibit the effects of hormones that can promote the growth of cancer, and are often in the form of systemic, or whole-body treatment. They may be hormones themselves. Examples include anti-estrogens and selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs), including, for example, tamoxifen (including NOLVADEX® tamoxifen), EVISTA® raloxifene, droloxifene, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone, and FARESTON® toremifene; anti-progesterones; estrogen receptor down-regulators (ERDs); agents that function to suppress or shut down the ovaries, for example, leutinizing hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) agonists such as LUPRON® and ELIGARD® leuprolide acetate, goserelin acetate, buserelin acetate and tripterelin; other anti-androgens such as flutamide, nilutamide and bicalutamide; and aromatase inhibitors that inhibit the enzyme aromatase, which regulates estrogen production in the adrenal glands, such as, for example, 4(5)-imidazoles, aminoglutethimide, MEGASE® megestrol acetate, AROMASIN® exemestane, formestanie, fadrozole, RIVISOR® vorozole, FEMARA® letrozole, and ARIMIDEX® anastrozole. In addition, such definition of chemotherapeutic agents includes bisphosphonates such as clodronate (for example, BONEFOS®

or OSTAC®), DIDROCAL® etidronate, NE-58095, ZOMETA® zoledronic acid/zoledronate, FOSAMAX® alendronate, AREDIA® pamidronate, SKELID® tiludronate, or ACTONEL® risedronate; as well as troxacitabine (a 1,3-dioxolane nucleoside cytosine analog); antisense oligonucleotides, particularly those that inhibit expression of genes in signaling pathways implicated in aberrant cell proliferation, such as, for example, PKC-alpha, Raf, H-Ras, and epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R); vaccines such as THERATOPE® vaccine and gene therapy vaccines, for example, ALLOVECTIN® vaccine, LEUVECTIN® vaccine, and VAXID® vaccine; LURTOTECAN® topoisomerase 1 inhibitor; ABARELIX® rmRH; lapatinib ditosylate (an ErbB-2 and EGFR dual tyrosine kinase small-molecule inhibitor also known as GW572016); and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above.

[00274] Another group of compounds that may be selected as neurological drugs for cancer treatment or prevention are anti-cancer immunoglobulins (including, but not limited to, trastuzumab, pertuzumab, bevacizumab, alemtuxumab, cetuximab, gemtuzumab ozogamicin, ibritumomab tiuxetan, panitumumab and rituximab). In some instances, antibodies in conjunction with a toxic label or conjugate may be used to target and kill desired cells (i.e., cancer cells), including, but not limited to, tositumomab with a ^{131}I radiolabel, or trastuzumab emtansine.

[00275] Ocular diseases or disorders are diseases or disorders of the eye, which for the purposes herein is considered a CNS organ segregated by the BBB. Ocular diseases or disorders include, but are not limited to, disorders of sclera, cornea, iris and ciliary body (i.e., scleritis, keratitis, corneal ulcer, corneal abrasion, snow blindness, arc eye, Thygeson's superficial punctate keratopathy, corneal neovascularisation, Fuchs' dystrophy, keratoconus, keratoconjunctivitis sicca, iritis and uveitis), disorders of the lens (i.e., cataract), disorders of choroid and retina (i.e., retinal detachment, retinoschisis, hypertensive retinopathy, diabetic retinopathy, retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity, age-related macular degeneration, macular degeneration (wet or dry), epiretinal membrane, retinitis pigmentosa and macular edema), glaucoma, floaters, disorders of optic nerve and visual pathways (i.e., Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy and optic disc drusen), disorders of ocular muscles/binocular movement accommodation/refraction (i.e., strabismus, ophthalmoparesis, progressive external opthalmoplegia, esotropia, exotropia, hypermetropia, myopia, astigmatism, anisometropia, presbyopia and ophthalmoplegia), visual disturbances and blindness (i.e., amblyopia, Lever's congenital amaurosis, scotoma, color blindness, achromatopsia, nyctalopia, blindness, river blindness and micro-opthalmia/coloboma), red eye, Argyll Robertson pupil, keratomycosis, xerophthalmia and andaniridia.

[00276] For an ocular disease or disorder, a neurological drug may be selected that is an anti-angiogenic ophthalmic agent (i.e., bevacizumab, ranibizumab and pegaptanib), an ophthalmic glaucoma agent (i.e., carbachol, epinephrine, demecarium bromide, apraclonidine, brimonidine,

brinzolamide, levobunolol, timolol, betaxolol, dorzolamide, bimatoprost, carteolol, metipranolol, dipivefrin, travoprost and latanoprost), a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor (i.e., methazolamide and acetazolamide), an ophthalmic antihistamine (i.e., naphazoline, phenylephrine and tetrahydrozoline), an ocular lubricant, an ophthalmic steroid (i.e., fluorometholone, prednisolone, loteprednol, dexamethasone, difluprednate, rimexolone, fluocinolone, medrysone and triamcinolone), an ophthalmic anesthetic (i.e., lidocaine, proparacaine and tetracaine), an ophthalmic anti-infective (i.e., levofloxacin, gatifloxacin, ciprofloxacin, moxifloxacin, chloramphenicol, bacitracin/polymyxin b, sulfacetamide, tobramycin, azithromycin, besifloxacin, norfloxacin, sulfisoxazole, gentamicin, idoxuridine, erythromycin, natamycin, gramicidin, neomycin, ofloxacin, trifluridine, ganciclovir, vidarabine), an ophthalmic anti-inflammatory agent (i.e., nepafenac, ketorolac, flurbiprofen, suprofen, cyclosporine, triamcinolone, diclofenac and bromfenac), and an ophthalmic antihistamine or decongestant (i.e., ketotifen, olopatadine, epinastine, naphazoline, cromolyn, tetrahydrozoline, pemirolast, bepotastine, naphazoline, phenylephrine, nedocromil, lodoxamide, phenylephrine, emedastine and azelastine).

[00277] Viral or microbial infections of the CNS include, but are not limited to, infections by viruses (i.e., influenza, HIV, poliovirus, rubella,), bacteria (i.e., Neisseria sp., Streptococcus sp., Pseudomonas sp., Proteus sp., E. coli, S. aureus, Pneumococcus sp., Meningococcus sp., Haemophilus sp., and Mycobacterium tuberculosis) and other microorganisms such as fungi (i.e., yeast, Cryptococcus neoformans), parasites (i.e., toxoplasma gondii) or amoebas resulting in CNS pathophysiologies including, but not limited to, meningitis, encephalitis, myelitis, vasculitis and abscess, which can be acute or chronic.

[00278] For a viral or microbial disease, a neurological drug may be selected that includes, but is not limited to, an antiviral compound (including, but not limited to, an adamantane antiviral (i.e., rimantadine and amantadine), an antiviral interferon (i.e., peginterferon alfa-2b), a chemokine receptor antagonist (i.e., maraviroc), an integrase strand transfer inhibitor (i.e., raltegravir), a neuraminidase inhibitor (i.e., oseltamivir and zanamivir), a non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (i.e., efavirenz, etravirine, delavirdine and nevirapine), a nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (tenofovir, abacavir, lamivudine, zidovudine, stavudine, entecavir, emtricitabine, adefovir, zalcitabine, telbivudine and didanosine), a protease inhibitor (i.e., darunavir, atazanavir, fosamprenavir, tipranavir, ritonavir, nelfinavir, amprenavir, indinavir and saquinavir), a purine nucleoside (i.e., valacyclovir, famciclovir, acyclovir, ribavirin, ganciclovir, valganciclovir and cidofovir), and a miscellaneous antiviral (i.e., enfuvirtide, foscarnet, palivizumab and fomivirsen)), an antibiotic (including, but not limited to, an aminopenicillin (i.e., amoxicillin, ampicillin, oxacillin, nafcillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, flucoxacillin, temocillin, azlocillin, carbenicillin, ticarcillin, mezlocillin, piperacillin and bacampicillin), a cephalosporin (i.e., cefazolin, cephalexin,

cephalothin, cefamandole, ceftriaxone, cefotaxime, cefpodoxime, ceftazidime, cefadroxil, cephradine, loracarbef, cefotetan, cefuroxime, cefprozil, cefaclor, and cefoxitin), a carbapenem/penem (i.e., imipenem, meropenem, ertapenem, faropenem and doripenem), a monobactam (i.e., aztreonam, tigemonam, norcardicin A and tabtoxinine-beta-lactam, a beta-lactamase inhibitor (i.e., clavulanic acid, tazobactam and sulbactam) in conjunction with another beta-lactam antibiotic, an aminoglycoside (i.e., amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, neomycin, netilmicin, streptomycin, tobramycin, and paromomycin), an ansamycin (i.e., geldanamycin and herbimycin), a carbacephem (i.e., loracarbef), a glycopeptides (i.e., teicoplanin and vancomycin), a macrolide (i.e., azithromycin, clarithromycin, dirithromycin, erythromycin, roxithromycin, troleandomycin, telithromycin and spectinomycin), a monobactam (i.e., aztreonam), a quinolone (i.e., ciprofloxacin, enoxacin, gatifloxacin, levofloxacin, lomefloxacin, moxifloxacin, norfloxacin, ofloxacin, trovafloxacin, grepafloxacin, sparfloxacin and temafloxacin), a sulfonamide (i.e., mafenide, sulfonamidochrysoidine, sulfacetamide, sulfadiazine, sulfamethizole, sulfanilamide, sulfasalazine, sulfisoxazole, trimethoprim, trimethoprim and sulfamethoxazole), a tetracycline (i.e., tetracycline, demeclocycline, doxycycline, minocycline and oxytetracycline), an antineoplastic or cytotoxic antibiotic (i.e., doxorubicin, mitoxantrone, bleomycin, daunorubicin, dactinomycin, epirubicin, idarubicin, plicamycin, mitomycin, pentostatin and valrubicin) and a miscellaneous antibacterial compound (i.e., bacitracin, colistin and polymyxin B)), an antifungal (i.e., metronidazole, nitazoxanide, tinidazole, chloroquine, iodoquinol and paromomycin), and an antiparasitic (including, but not limited to, quinine, chloroquine, amodiaquine, pyrimethamine, sulphadoxine, proguanil, mefloquine, atovaquone, primaquine, artemesinin, halofantrine, doxycycline, clindamycin, mebendazole, pyrantel pamoate, thiabendazole, diethylcarbamazine, ivermectin, rifampin, amphotericin B, melarsoprol, efornithine and albendazole).

[00279] Inflammation of the CNS includes, but is not limited to, inflammation that is caused by an injury to the CNS, which can be a physical injury (i.e., due to accident, surgery, brain trauma, spinal cord injury, concussion) and an injury due to or related to one or more other diseases or disorders of the CNS (i.e., abscess, cancer, viral or microbial infection).

[00280] For CNS inflammation, a neurological drug may be selected that addresses the inflammation itself (i.e., a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agent such as ibuprofen or naproxen), or one which treats the underlying cause of the inflammation (i.e., an anti-viral or anti-cancer agent).

[00281] Ischemia of the CNS, as used herein, refers to a group of disorders relating to aberrant blood flow or vascular behavior in the brain or the causes therefor, and includes, but is not limited to: focal brain ischemia, global brain ischemia, stroke (i.e., subarachnoid hemorrhage and intracerebral hemorrhage), and aneurysm.

[00282] For ischemia, a neurological drug may be selected that includes, but is not limited to, a thrombolytic (i.e., urokinase, alteplase, reteplase and tenecteplase), a platelet aggregation inhibitor (i.e., aspirin, cilostazol, clopidogrel, prasugrel and dipyridamole), a statin (i.e., lovastatin, pravastatin, fluvastatin, rosuvastatin, atorvastatin, simvastatin, cerivastatin and pitavastatin), and a compound to improve blood flow or vascular flexibility, including, e.g., blood pressure medications.

[00283] Neurodegenerative diseases are a group of diseases and disorders associated with neural cell loss of function or death in the CNS, and include, but are not limited to: adrenoleukodystrophy, Alexander's disease, Alper's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, ataxia telangiectasia, Batten disease, cockayne syndrome, corticobasal degeneration, degeneration caused by or associated with an amyloidosis, Friedreich's ataxia, frontotemporal lobar degeneration, Kennedy's disease, multiple system atrophy, multiple sclerosis, primary lateral sclerosis, progressive supranuclear palsy, spinal muscular atrophy, transverse myelitis, Refsum's disease, and spinocerebellar ataxia.

[00284] For a neurodegenerative disease, a neurological drug may be selected that is a growth hormone or neurotrophic factor; examples include but are not limited to brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), nerve growth factor (NGF), neurotrophin-4/5, fibroblast growth factor (FGF)-2 and other FGFs, neurotrophin (NT)-3, erythropoietin (EPO), hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), epidermal growth factor (EGF), transforming growth factor (TGF)-alpha, TGF-beta, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), interleukin-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1ra), ciliary neurotrophic factor (CNTF), glial-derived neurotrophic factor (GDNF), neurturin, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), heregulin, neuregulin, artemin, persephin, interleukins, glial cell line derived neurotrophic factor (GFR), granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (CSF), granulocyte-macrophage-CSF, netrins, cardiotrophin-1, hedgehogs, leukemia inhibitory factor (LIF), midkine, pleiotrophin, bone morphogenetic proteins (BMPs), netrins, saposins, semaphorins, and stem cell factor (SCF).

[00285] Seizure diseases and disorders of the CNS involve inappropriate and/or abnormal electrical conduction in the CNS, and include, but are not limited to epilepsy (i.e., absence seizures, atonic seizures, benign Rolandic epilepsy, childhood absence, clonic seizures, complex partial seizures, frontal lobe epilepsy, febrile seizures, infantile spasms, juvenile myoclonic epilepsy, juvenile absence epilepsy, Lennox-Gastaut syndrome, Landau-Kleffner Syndrome, Dravet's syndrome, Otahara syndrome, West syndrome, myoclonic seizures, mitochondrial disorders, progressive myoclonic epilepsies, psychogenic seizures, reflex epilepsy, Rasmussen's Syndrome, simple partial seizures, secondarily generalized seizures, temporal lobe epilepsy, toniclonic seizures, tonic seizures, psychomotor seizures, limbic epilepsy, partial-onset seizures, generalized-onset seizures, status epilepticus, abdominal epilepsy, akinetic seizures, autonomic seizures,

massive bilateral myoclonus, catamenial epilepsy, drop seizures, emotional seizures, focal seizures, gelastic seizures, Jacksonian March, Lafora Disease, motor seizures, multifocal seizures, nocturnal seizures, photosensitive seizure, pseudo seizures, sensory seizures, subtle seizures, sylvan seizures, withdrawal seizures, and visual reflex seizures).

[00286] For a seizure disorder, a neurological drug may be selected that is an anticonvulsant or antiepileptic including, but not limited to, barbiturate anticonvulsants (i.e., primidone, metharbital, mephobarbital, allobarbital, amobarbital, aprobarbital, alphenal, barbital, brallobarbital and phenobarbital), benzodiazepine anticonvulsants (i.e., diazepam, clonazepam, and lorazepam), carbamate anticonvulsants (i.e. felbamate), carbonic anhydrase inhibitor anticonvulsants (i.e., acetazolamide, topiramate and zonisamide), dibenzazepine anticonvulsants (i.e., rufinamide, carbamazepine, and oxcarbazepine), fatty acid derivative anticonvulsants (i.e., divalproex and valproic acid), gamma-aminobutyric acid analogs (i.e., pregabalin, gabapentin and vigabatrin), gamma-aminobutyric acid reuptake inhibitors (i.e., tiagabine), gamma-aminobutyric acid transaminase inhibitors (i.e., vigabatrin), hydantoin anticonvulsants (i.e. phenytoin, ethotoin, fosphenytoin and mephenytoin), miscellaneous anticonvulsants (i.e., lacosamide and magnesium sulfate), progestins (i.e., progesterone), oxazolidinedione anticonvulsants (i.e., paramethadione and trimethadione), pyrrolidine anticonvulsants (i.e., levetiracetam), succinimide anticonvulsants (i.e., ethosuximide and methsuximide), triazine anticonvulsants (i.e., lamotrigine), and urea anticonvulsants (i.e., phenacemide and pheneturide).

[00287] Behavioral disorders are disorders of the CNS characterized by aberrant behavior on the part of the afflicted subject and include, but are not limited to: sleep disorders (i.e., insomnia, parasomnias, night terrors, circadian rhythm sleep disorders, and narcolepsy), mood disorders (i.e., depression, suicidal depression, anxiety, chronic affective disorders, phobias, panic attacks, obsessive-compulsive disorder, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), attention deficit disorder (ADD), chronic fatigue syndrome, agoraphobia, post-traumatic stress disorder, bipolar disorder), eating disorders (i.e., anorexia or bulimia), psychoses, developmental behavioral disorders (i.e., autism, Rett's syndrome, Aspberger's syndrome), personality disorders and psychotic disorders (i.e., schizophrenia, delusional disorder, and the like).

[00288] For a behavioral disorder, a neurological drug may be selected from a behavior-modifying compound including, but not limited to, an atypical antipsychotic (i.e., risperidone, olanzapine, apripiprazole, quetiapine, paliperidone, asenapine, clozapine, iloperidone and ziprasidone), a phenothiazine antipsychotic (i.e., prochlorperazine, chlorpromazine, fluphenazine, perphenazine, trifluoperazine, thioridazine and mesoridazine), a thioxanthene (i.e., thiothixene), a miscellaneous antipsychotic (i.e., pimozide, lithium, molindone, haloperidol and loxapine), a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (i.e., citalopram, escitalopram, paroxetine, fluoxetine and

sertraline), a serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor (i.e., duloxetine, venlafaxine, desvenlafaxine, a tricyclic antidepressant (i.e., doxepin, clomipramine, amoxapine, nortriptyline, amitriptyline, trimipramine, imipramine, protriptyline and desipramine), a tetracyclic antidepressant (i.e., mirtazapine and maprotiline), a phenylpiperazine antidepressant (i.e., trazodone and nefazodone), a monoamine oxidase inhibitor (i.e., isocarboxazid, phenelzine, selegiline and tranylcypromine), a benzodiazepine (i.e., alprazolam, estazolam, flurazeptam, clonazepam, lorazepam and diazepam), a norepinephrine-dopamine reuptake inhibitor (i.e., bupropion), a CNS stimulant (i.e., phentermine, diethylpropion, methamphetamine, dextroamphetamine, amphetamine, methylphenidate, dexmethylphenidate, lisdexamfetamine, modafinil, pemoline, phendimetrazine, benzphetamine, phendimetrazine, armodafinil, diethylpropion, caffeine, atomoxetine, doxapram, and mazindol), an anxiolytic/sedative/hypnotic (including, but not limited to, a barbiturate (i.e., secobarbital, phenobarbital and mephobarbital), a benzodiazepine (as described above), and a miscellaneous anxiolytic/sedative/hypnotic (i.e. diphenhydramine, sodium oxybate, zaleplon, hydroxyzine, chloral hydrate, aolpidem, buspirone, doxepin, eszopiclone, ramelteon, meprobamate and ethclorvynol)), a secretin (see, e.g., Ratliff-Schaub et al. *Autism* 9: 256-265 (2005)), an opioid peptide (see, e.g., Cowen et al., *J. Neurochem.* 89:273-285 (2004)), and a neuropeptide (see, e.g., Hethwa et al. *Am. J. Physiol.* 289: E301-305 (2005)).

[00289] Lysosomal storage disorders are metabolic disorders which are in some cases associated with the CNS or have CNS-specific symptoms; such disorders include, but are not limited to: Tay-Sachs disease, Gaucher's disease, Fabry disease, mucopolysaccharidosis (types I, II, III, IV, V, VI and VII), glycogen storage disease, GM1-gangliosidosis, metachromatic leukodystrophy, Farber's disease, Canavan's leukodystrophy, and neuronal ceroid lipofuscinoses types 1 and 2, Niemann-Pick disease, Pompe disease, and Krabbe's disease.

[00290] For a lysosomal storage disease, a neurological drug may be selected that is itself or otherwise mimics the activity of the enzyme that is impaired in the disease. Exemplary recombinant enzymes for the treatment of lysosomal storage disorders include, but are not limited to those set forth in e.g., U.S. Patent Application publication no. 2005/0142141 (i.e., alpha-L-iduronidase, iduronate-2-sulphatase, N-sulfatase, alpha-N-acetylglucosaminidase, N-acetyl-galactosamine-6-sulfatase, beta-galactosidase, arylsulphatase B, beta-glucuronidase, acid alpha-glucosidase, glucocerebrosidase, alpha-galactosidase A, hexosaminidase A, acid sphingomyelinase, beta-galactocerebrosidase, beta-galactosidase, arylsulfatase A, acid ceramidase, aspartoacylase, palmitoyl-protein thioesterase 1 and tripeptidyl amino peptidase 1).

[00291] In another embodiment, diseases related to or caused by inappropriate overproduction of red blood cells, or wherein the overproduction of red blood cells is an effect of the disease, can

be prevented or treated by the reticulocyte-depleting effect recognized herein of anti-TfR antibodies retaining at least partial effector function. For example, in congenital or neoplastic polycythemia vera, elevated red blood cell counts due to hyperproliferation of, e.g., reticulocytes, results in thickening of blood and concomitant physiological symptoms (d'Onofrio et al., Clin. Lab. Haematol. (1996) Suppl. 1: 29-34). Administration of an anti-TfR antibody of the invention wherein at least partial effector function of the antibody was preserved would permit selective removal of immature reticulocyte populations without impacting normal transferrin transport into the CNS. Dosing of such an antibody could be modulated such that acute clinical symptoms could be minimized (ie, by dosing at a very low dose or at widely-spaced intervals), as well-understood in the art.

[00292] In some aspects, an antibody of the invention is used to detect a neurological disorder before the onset of symptoms and/or to assess the severity or duration of the disease or disorder. In some aspects, the antibody permits detection and/or imaging of the neurological disorder, including imaging by radiography, tomography, or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).

[00293] In some aspects, a low affinity anti-TfR antibody of the invention for use as a medicament is provided. In further aspects, a low affinity anti-TfR antibody for use in treating a neurological disease or disorder (e.g., Alzheimer's disease) without depleting red blood cells (ie, reticulocytes) is provided. In certain embodiments, a modified low affinity anti-TfR antibody for use in a method of treatment as described herein is provided. In certain embodiments, the invention provides a low affinity anti-TfR antibody modified to improve its safety for use in a method of treating an individual having a neurological disease or disorder comprising administering to the individual an effective amount of the anti-TfR antibody (optionally coupled to a neurological disorder drug). In one such embodiment, the method further comprises administering to the individual an effective amount of at least one additional therapeutic agent. In further embodiments, the invention provides an anti-TfR antibody modified to improve its safety for use in reducing or inhibiting amlyoid plaque formation in a patient at risk or suffering from a neurological disease or disorder (e.g., Alzheimer's disease). An "individual" according to any of the above embodiments is optionally a human. In certain aspects, the anti-TfR antibody of the invention for use in the methods of the invention improves uptake of the neurological disorder drug with which it is coupled.

[00294] In a further aspect, the invention provides for the use of a low affinity anti-TfR antibody of the invention in the manufacture or preparation of a medicament. In some embodiments, the medicament is for treatment of neurological disease or disorder. In a further embodiment, the medicament is for use in a method of treating neurological disease or disorder comprising administering to an individual having neurological disease or disorder an effective

amount of the medicament. In one such embodiment, the method further comprises administering to the individual an effective amount of at least one additional therapeutic agent.

[00295] In a further aspect, the invention provides a method for treating Alzheimer's disease. In some embodiments, the method comprises administering to an individual having Alzheimer's disease an effective amount of a multispecific antibody of the invention which binds both BACE1 and TfR or both Abeta and TfR. In one such embodiment, the method further comprises administering to the individual an effective amount of at least one additional therapeutic agent. An "individual" according to any of the above embodiments may be a human.

[00296] The anti-TfR antibodies of the invention can be used either alone or in combination with other agents in a therapy. For instance, the anti-TfR antibody of the invention may be co-administered with at least one additional therapeutic agent. In certain embodiments, an additional therapeutic agent is a therapeutic agent effective to treat the same or a different neurological disorder as the anti-TfR antibody is being employed to treat. Exemplary additional therapeutic agents include, but are not limited to: the various neurological drugs described above, cholinesterase inhibitors (such as donepezil, galantamine, rovastigmine, and tacrine), NMDA receptor antagonists (such as memantine), amyloid beta peptide aggregation inhibitors, antioxidants, γ-secretase modulators, nerve growth factor (NGF) mimics or NGF gene therapy, PPARγ agonists, HMS-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins), ampakines, calcium channel blockers, GABA receptor antagonists, glycogen synthase kinase inhibitors, intravenous immunoglobulin, muscarinic receptor agonists, nicrotinic receptor modulators, active or passive amyloid beta peptide immunization, phosphodiesterase inhibitors, serotonin receptor antagonists and anti-amyloid beta peptide antibodies. In certain embodiments, the at least one additional therapeutic agent is selected for its ability to mitigate one or more side effects of the neurological drug.

[00297] As exemplified herein, certain anti-TfR antibodies may have side effects that negatively impact reticulocyte populations in a subject treated with the anti-TfR antibody. Thus, in certain embodiments, at least one further therapeutic agent selected for its ability to mitigate such negative side effect on reticulocyte populations is coadministered with an anti-TfR antibody of the invention. Examples of such therapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, agents to increase red blood cell (ie, reticulocyte) populations, agents to support growth and development of red blood cells (ie, reticulocytes), and agents to protect red blood cell populations from the effects of the anti-TfR antibody; such agents include, but are not limited to, erythropoietin (EPO), iron supplements, vitamin C, folic acid, and vitamin B12, as well as physical replacement of red blood cells (ie, reticulocytes) by, for example, transfusion with similar cells, which may be from another individual of similar blood type or may have been previously extracted from the subject to whom the anti-TfR antibody is administered. It will be understood by one of ordinary skill in the art that

in some instances, agents intended to protect existing red blood cells (ie, reticulocytes) are preferably administered to the subject preceding or concurrent with the anti-TfR antibody therapy, while agents intended to support or initiate the regrowth/development of red blood cells or blood cell populations (ie, reticulocytes or reticulocyte populations) are preferably administered concurrent with or after the anti-TfR antibody therapy such that such blood cells can be replenished after the anti-TfR antibody treatment.

[00298] In certain other such embodiments, the at least one further therapeutic agent is selected for its ability to inhibit or prevent the activation of the complement pathway upon administration of the anti-TfR antibody. Examples of such therapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, agents that interfere with the ability of the anti-TfR antibody to bind to or activate the complement pathway and agents that inhibit one or more molecular interactions within the complement pathway, and are described generally in Mollnes and Kirschfink (2006) Molec. Immunol. 43:107-121, the contents of which are expressly incorporated herein by reference.

[00299] Such combination therapies noted above and herein encompass combined administration (where two or more therapeutic agents are included in the same or separate formulations), and separate administration, in which case, administration of the antibody of the invention can occur prior to, simultaneously, and/or following, administration of the additional therapeutic agent and/or adjuvant. In some embodiments, administration of the anti-TfR antibody and administration of an additional therapeutic agent occur within about one month, or within about one, two or three weeks, or within about one, two, three, four, five or six days, of each other. Antibodies of the invention can also be used in combination with other interventional therapies such as, but not limited to, radiation therapy, behavioral therapy, or other therapies known in the art and appropriate for the neurological disorder to be treated or prevented.

[00300] An anti-TfR antibody of the invention (and any additional therapeutic agent) can be administered by any suitable means, including parenteral, intrapulmonary, and intranasal, and, if desired for local treatment, intralesional administration. Parenteral infusions include intramuscular, intravenous, intraarterial, intraperitoneal, or subcutaneous administration. Dosing can be by any suitable route, e.g. by injections, such as intravenous or subcutaneous injections, depending in part on whether the administration is brief or chronic. Various dosing schedules including but not limited to single or multiple administrations over various time-points, bolus administration, and pulse infusion are contemplated herein.

[00301] Antibodies of the invention would be formulated, dosed, and administered in a fashion consistent with good medical practice. Factors for consideration in this context include the particular disorder being treated, the particular mammal being treated, the clinical condition of the individual patient, the cause of the disorder, the site of delivery of the agent, the method of

administration, the scheduling of administration, and other factors known to medical practitioners. The antibody need not be, but is optionally formulated with one or more agents currently used to prevent or treat the disorder in question or to prevent, mitigate or ameliorate one or more side effects of antibody administration. The effective amount of such other agents depends on the amount of antibody present in the formulation, the type of disorder or treatment, and other factors discussed above. These are generally used in the same dosages and with administration routes as described herein, or about from 1 to 99% of the dosages described herein, or in any dosage and by any route that is empirically/clinically determined to be appropriate.

[00302] For the prevention or treatment of disease, the appropriate dosage of an antibody of the invention (when used alone or in combination with one or more other additional therapeutic agents) will depend on the type of disease to be treated, the type of antibody, the severity and course of the disease, whether the antibody is administered for preventive or therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the antibody, and the discretion of the attending physician. The antibody is suitably administered to the patient at one time or over a series of treatments. Depending on the type and severity of the disease, about 1 μg/kg to 15 mg/kg (e.g. 0.1mg/kg-10mg/kg) of antibody can be an initial candidate dosage for administration to the patient, whether, for example, by one or more separate administrations, or by continuous infusion. One typical daily dosage might range from about 1 μg/kg to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment would generally be sustained until a desired suppression of disease symptoms occurs. One exemplary dosage of the antibody would be in the range from about 0.05 mg/kg to about 40 mg/kg. Thus, one or more doses of about 0.5 mg/kg, 2.0 mg/kg, 4.0 mg/kg, 5.0 mg/kg, 7.5 mg/kg, 10 mg/kg, 15 mg/kg, 20 mg/kg, 25 mg/kg, 30 mg/kg, 35 mg/kg or 40 mg/kg (or any combination thereof) may be administered to the patient. Such doses may be administered intermittently, e.g. every week or every three weeks (*e.g.* such that the patient receives from about two to about twenty, or *e.g.* about six doses of the antibody). An initial higher loading dose, followed by one or more lower doses may be administered. However, other dosage regimens may be useful. It will be appreciated that one method to reduce impact on reticulocyte populations by administration of anti-TfR antibodies is to modify the amount or timing of the doses such that overall lower quantities of circulating antibody are present in the bloodstream to interact with reticulocytes. In one nonlimiting example, a lower dose of the anti-TfR antibodies may be administered with greater frequency than a higher dose would be. The dosage used may be balanced between the amount of antibody necessary to be delivered to the CNS (itself related to the affinity of the CNS antigen-specific portion of the antibody), the affinity of that antibody for TfR, and whether or not red blood cell (ie, reticulocyte)-protecting, growth and development-

stimulating, or complement pathway-inhibiting compound(s) are being co- or serially administered with the antibody. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays as described herein and as known in the art.

[00303] It is understood that any of the above formulations or therapeutic methods may be carried out using an immunoconjugate of the invention in place of or in addition to an anti-TfR antibody.

H. Articles of Manufacture

[00304] In another aspect of the invention, an article of manufacture containing materials useful for the treatment, prevention and/or diagnosis of the disorders described above is provided. The article of manufacture comprises a container and a label or package insert on or associated with the container. Suitable containers include, for example, bottles, vials, syringes, IV solution bags, etc. The containers may be formed from a variety of materials such as glass or plastic. The container holds a composition which is by itself or combined with another composition effective for treating, preventing and/or diagnosing the condition and may have a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is an antibody of the invention. The label or package insert indicates that the composition is used for treating the condition of choice. Moreover, the article of manufacture may comprise (a) a first container with a composition contained therein, wherein the composition comprises an antibody of the invention; and (b) a second container with a composition contained therein, wherein the composition comprises a further cytotoxic or otherwise therapeutic agent. The article of manufacture in this embodiment of the invention may further comprise a package insert indicating that the compositions can be used to treat a particular condition. Alternatively, or additionally, the article of manufacture may further comprise a second (or third) container comprising a pharmaceutically-acceptable buffer, such as bacteriostatic water for injection (BWFI), phosphate-buffered saline, Ringer's solution and dextrose solution. It may further include other materials desirable from a commercial and user standpoint, including other buffers, diluents, filters, needles, and syringes.

[00305] It is understood that any of the above articles of manufacture may include an immunoconjugate of the invention in place of or in addition to an anti-TfR antibody.

EXAMPLES

EXAMPLE 1: GENERATION, CHARACTERIZATION AND HUMANIZATION OF HUMAN/CYNO CROSS-REACTIVE ANTI-TFR ANTIBODIES

[00306] Initially, a naïve antibody phage panning process was performed in an attempt to identify antibodies cross-reactive with both human TfR and TfR from cynomolgous ("cyno") monkeys that further did not compete with Tf for binding to TfR (*Lee et al. JMB (2004) 1073-1093*). No such cross-reactive, non-Tf-competing clone was identified from this phage panning process. However, two antibodies were identified that were useful in characterizing subsequently generated hybridoma clones.

[00307] A species cross-reactive antibody was identified that competes with Tf for binding to human or cyno TfR (Tf-competing antibody). The epitope of another clone, specific for human TfR, was mapped to the apical domain of huTfR using mouse/human chimeric TfR receptors (Figure 1). This apical domain-binding clone lost binding to huTfR when the mouse TfR sequence in the apical domain was substituted into huTfR.

[00308] Next, an immunization-based approach to generate cross-reactive anti-human/cyno TfR antibodies was performed. Human TfR extracellular domain ("ecd") containing an N-terminal His tag and human hemachromatosis protein ("HFE") were expressed and purified as described (*Bennet et al, Nature (2000) 403, 46-53*). An analogous cyno TfR ecd construct was also made. Cyno TfR was expressed and purified in a similar manner. Human and cyno cross-reactive TfR antibodies were generated by immunizing 5 Balb/C mice in the footpad with 6 doses (twice per week) containing 2 μg each of cynoTfR and huTfR ecd. All mice sera were FACS positive and all mice were fused. Of 1632 hybridomas screened, 111 were ELISA positive for binding to both human and cyno TfR.

[00309] The resulting ELISA-positive hybridomas were screened by FACS in the presence of 1 μM human holo-Tf for binding to 293 cells transiently expressing human or cyno TfR. Briefly, FACS analysis was performed using 293 cells transfected with full length human or cyno TfR using lipofectamin 2000 plus (Invitrogen) 48-72 h before FACS analysis. Non-transfected (control) and transfected 293 cells were washed twice with FACS buffer (PBS containing 1% BSA), 50 μl of hybridoma supernatant (normalized to 10 μg/ml) was added to 293 cells in the presence of 1 μM human holo-Tf and incubated on ice for 30 min. Cells were washed twice with FACS buffer, 50 μl of PE-Goat-anti-murine Fcγ (Jackson ImmunoResearch) was added to cells and they were incubated on ice for 30 min. Cells were washed with FACS buffer and resuspended in 100μl FACS buffer for analysis.

[00310] 14 clones were positive for binding to both human and cyno TfR (Figures 2A and 2B). These clones were further subcloned and evaluated for binding to both human and cyno TfR by ELISA, and epitope mapped on huTfR using the apical binding phage clone identified above. Briefly, the apical domain phage competition ELISA was performed in maxisorp plates coated with 2 μg/ml of purified human or cyno TfR in PBS at 4°C overnight. Plates were washed with

PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and blocked using Superblock with casein (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). A 30 µl aliquot of hybridoma supernatant (normalized to 10 µg/ml) was added to each well for 45 min. This was followed by the addition of 30 µl apical domain-binding phage at OD 0.05 for 15 min. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and 1:1000 diluted HRP-Mouse-anti M13 (GE healthcare) was added the plate and incubated for 1 h at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and bound phage were detected using TMB substrate (BioFX Laboratories, Owings Mills). Nine of the fourteen clones were found to block binding of the apical binding antibody displayed on phage (see Figure 2C).

[00311] Antibody affinities were measured using surface plasmon resonance ("SPR") (Biacore™, GE Healthcare). Anti-His antibody (Qiagen) was coupled onto four different flow cells of a BIACORE™ CM5 sensor chip (Biacore, Inc., Piscataway, NJ) at between 6000 and 8000 RU. Immobilization was achieved by random coupling through amino groups using a protocol provided by the manufacturer. 10X HBS-P (Biacore, Inc., Piscataway, NJ) was diluted in water and served as the dilution and running buffer. Purified human or cyno TfR was captured, followed by a 3-fold dilution series of IgG or Fab that was injected at a flow rate of 30 ml/min using the single cycle kinetics method. Affinity constants were determined using a simple 1:1 Langmuir binding model or using a steady state model when k_{on} or k_{off} was beyond the detection limit. The equilibrium dissociation constant (K_D) was calculated as the ratio of association rate constant (k_{on}) and dissociation rate constant (k_{off}). The results are shown in Figure 2C.

[00312] Each hybridoma was cloned. Total RNA was isolated from hybridoma using an RNeasy mini kit (Qiagen). cDNA was generated using a SMART 5' RACE cDNA Amplification kit (Clontech) based on the manufacturer's instructions. The variable region of each antibody was amplified using UPM (5' oligo) provided in the kit and a 3' oligo that anneals to the constant region. The entire PCR product was then cloned into pCR4Blunt-TOPO vector (Invitrogen) for sequencing. After sequence analysis, the hybridomas could be further subdivided into 4 groups (Figures 3A-3D). Clones that competed with the apical binding antibody fell into 3 related sequence classes (Figure 3 A-C). The 4 non-apical clones (Figure 3D) consisted of 2 related clones and 2 other unique sequences. The light and heavy chain CDRs of each clone are provided in Table 3.

TABLE 3: Light and Heavy Chain CDRs of Cross-Reactive Anti-Cyno/Human TfR Antibodies

Clone name	Heavy/ Light	HVR1	SEQ ID #	HVR2	SEQ ID #	HVR3	SEQ ID #
7A4	Light	RASESVDSYGNSFMH	29	RASNLES	30	QQSNEAPPT	31
	Heavy	DYAMH	32	GISTYFGRTNYNQKFKG	33	GLSGNYVMDY	34
8A2	Light	RASESVDSYGNSFMH	35	RASNLES	30	QQSNEGPPT	36
	Heavy	DYGMH	37	VISPYSGRTNYNQNFKG	38	GLSGNYVVDY	39
15D2	Light	RASESVDSYGNSFMH	35	RASNLES	30	QQSNEGPPT	36
	Heavy	DYAMH	32	VISFYSGKTNYNQKFMG	40	GLSGNYVMDY	34
10D11	Light	RASESVDSYGNSFMH	41	RASNLES	30	QHSNEDPPT	42
	Heavy	DYGMH	37	VISPYSGKTNYSQKFKG	43	GLSGNFVMDF	44
7B10	Light	RASESVDSYGNSFMH	29	RASNLES	30	QQSNEAPPT	31
	Heavy	DYAMH	32	GISTYFGRTNYNQKFKG	33	GLSGNYVMDY	34
Consensus Class I Light CDRs		RASESVD(S/D)YG(N/P)SFMH	45	RASNLES	30	Q(Q/H)SNE(A/G/D)PPT	46
Consensus Class I heavy CDRs		DY(A/G)MH	47	(G/V)IS(T/F/P)Y(F/S)G(R/K)TNY(N/S)Q(K/N)F(K/M)G	48	GLSGN(Y/F)V(M/V)D(Y/F)	49
15G11	Light	RASDNLYSNLA	50	DATNLAD	51	QHFWGTPLT	52
	Heavy	SYWMH	53	EINPTNGRTNYIEKFKS	54	GTRAYHY	55
16G5	Light	RASENIYSNLA	56	AATDLAD	57	QHFWGTPLT	52
	Heav	SYWMH	53	EINPTNGRTNYNENFKS	58	GTRAYHF	59

	y						
13C3	Light	RASDNIYSNLA	60	AATNLAD	61	QHFWGTPLM	62
	Heavy	SYWMH	53	EINPINGRTNYSEKFKK	63	GTRAYHY	55
16G4	Light	RASDNIYSNLA	60	AVTNLAD	64	QHFWGTPLT	52
	Heavy	SYWMH	53	EINPSNGRTNYNETFKS	65	GTRAYHY	55
Consensus Class II Light CDRs		RAS(E/D)N(L/I)YSNLA	66	(D/A)(A/V)T(N/D)LAD	67	QHFWGTPL(T/M)	68
Consensus Class II Heavy CDRs		SYWMH	53	EINP(T/I/S)NGRTNY(I/N/S)E(K/N/T)FK(S/K)	69	GTRAYH(Y/F)	70
16F6	Light	RASKSISKYLA	71	SGSTLQS	72	QQHNEYPWT	73
	Heavy	SEYAWN	74	YISYSGTTSYNPSLKS	75	YGYGNPATRYFDV	76
7G7	Light	RARQSVSTSSYSFMH	77	YASIQES	78	QHTWEIPFT	79
	Heavy	SYWMH	80	NIYPGSGSTKYDERFKS	81	GGYDSRAWFAY	82
4C2	Light	RARQSVSTSSYSFMH	77	YASIQES	78	QHTWEIPFT	79
	Heavy	SYWMH	80	NIYPGSGSTKYDEKFKS	83	GGYDSRAWFAH	84
1B12	Light	TTSSSVPSSYFH	85	STSNLAS	86	HQYHRSPFT	87
	Heavy	DYYMY	88	SISNGGDNTYYPDTVKG	89	QGALYDGYYRGAMDY	90
13D4	Light	RAGQDITNYLN	91	YTSRLHS	92	QQANTLPYT	93
	Heavy	NYWIE	94	EILPGSGSTKYNEKFKG	95	RGGYGYDGEFAY	96
Consensus Class IV Light CDRs		(R/T)(A/T)(R/S/G)(Q/S)(S/-)(V/-)(S/-)(T/-)(S/V/D)(S/P/I)(Y/S/T)(S/N)(F/Y)(M/F/L)(H/N)	97	(Y/S)(A/T)S(I/N/R)(Q/L)(E/A/H)S	98	(Q/H)(H/Q)(T/Y/A)(W/H/N)(E/R/T)(I/S/L)P(F/Y)T	99

Consensus Class IV Heavy CDRs	(S/D/N)Y(W/Y)(M/I)(H/Y/E)	100	(N/S/E)I(Y/S/L)(P/N)G(S/G)(G/D)(S/N)T(K/Y)Y(D/P/N)(E/D)(R/K/T)(F/V)K(S/G)	101	(G/Q/R)G(Y/A/G)(D/L/Y)(S/Y/G)(R/D/Y)(A/G/D)(W/Y/G)(F/Y/E)(R/F/-)(G/-)(A/-)(M/-)(A/D)(Y/H)	102

[00313] Representative clones from each class, (15G11, 7A4, 16F6 and 7G7), are exemplified herein for humanization and further characterization. Humanization was achieved using HVR grafts along with the inclusion of select vernier positions as outlined below and Figures 4A-4E. 15G11 was humanized by grafting the HVRs into the IGKV1-NL1*01 and IGHV1-3*01 human variable domains. Combinations of different mouse vernier positions were included in the humanized variants as outlined in Figure 4E. Humanized 15G11 variant 15G11.v5 contains selected vernier positions in VL (positions 43 and 48) and VH (positions 48, 67, 69, 71 and 73) as outlined in Figure 4A. In addition, The N-terminus of VH was changed from Q to E. For humanization of 7A4, an HVR graft was made using the 7A4 heavy chain and 8A2 light chain HVRs (7A4 and 8A2 are related clones, Figure 3A). HVRs were grafted into the IGKV4-1*01 and IGHV1-2*02 human variable domains. Combinations of different mouse vernier positions were included in the humanized variants as outlined in Figure 4E. Humanized 7A4 variant, 7A4.v15 contains selected vernier positions in VL (position 68) and VH (positions 24 and 71) and the CDR-L3 change G94A, as outlined in Figure 4B. 7G7 was humanized by grafting the HVRs into the kappa 4 and subgroup I human consensus variable domains along with selected vernier positions in VH (position 93) as outlined in Figure 4C. This humanized variant is called 7G7.v1. 16F6 was humanized by grafting the HVRs into the IGKV1-9*01 and IGHV4-59*01 human variable domains. Combinations of different mouse vernier positions were included in the humanized variants as outlined in Figure 4E. Humanized 16F6 variant 16F6.v4 contains 2 changes in VL (I48L and F71Y) as well as selected vernier positions in VL (positions 43 and 44) and VH (positions 71 and 78) as outlined in Figure 4D.

TABLE 4: Light and Heavy Chain CDRs of Humanized Antibodies/Fabs

Clone name	Heavy/ Light	CDR1	SEQ ID #	CDR2	SEQ ID #	CDR3	SEQ ID #
15G11.v5	Light	RASDNLYSNLA	50	DATNLAD	51	QHFWGTPLT	52
	Heavy	SYWMH	53	EINPTNGRTNYIEKFKS	54	GTRAYHY	55
7A4.v15	Light	RASESVDSYGNSFMH	29	RASNLES	30	QQSNEAPPT	127
	Heavy	DYAMH	32	GISTYFGRTNYNQKFKG	33	GLSGNYVMDY	34
7G7.v1	Light	RARQSVSTSSYSFMH	77	YASIQES	78	QHTWEIPFT	79
	Heavy	SYWMH	80	NIYPGSGSTKYDERFKS	81	GGYDSRAWFAY	82
16F6.v4	Light	RASKSISKYLA	71	SGSTLQS	72	QQHNEYPWT	73
	Heavy	SEYAWN	74	YISYSGTTSYNPSLKS	75	YGYGNPATRYFDV	76

[00314] The affinity of humanized variants for human and cyno TfR was determined by SPR as IgG (Figure 4E). Selected clones were also analyzed by SPR as Fab to assess monovalent affinity (Table 7). In both cases, the SPR experiments were performed as described above.

TABLE 5: Biacore Binding Data for Selected Fab-Formatted Variants

	HuTfR			CynoTfR			Cy/hu
Sample	Ka	Kd	KD	Ka	Kd	KD	ratio
Mu15G11.Fab	1.38E+06	4.65E-03	3.37E-09	1.07E+06	6.23E-03	5.81E-09	1.72
Mu15G11.Fab	6.34E+05	1.52E-03	2.41E-09	4.85E+05	3.68E-03	7.57E-09	3.15
Hu15G11.v1.Fab	6.38E+05	0.006986	1.09E-08	5.05E+05	0.0373	7.39E-08	
Hu15G11.v3.Fab	6.42E+05	0.004657	7.26E-09	4.83E+05	0.0201	1.09E-08	
Hu15G11.v5.Fab	4.56E+05	0.004063	8.91E-09				
hu15G11.v5.Fab	7.76E+05	0.003643	4.70E-09	1.41E+06	0.02184	1.56E-08	3.4
Mu7A4.Fab	1.65E+06	3.13E-04	1.90E-10	1.14E+06	8.45E-04	7.41E-10	3.9
Hu7A4.v5.Fab	2.24E+06	1.53E-03	6.86E-10	1.18E+06	6.41E-03	5.44E-09	
Hu7A4.v8.Fab	9.28E+05	1.07E-03	1.15E-09	7.97E+05	6.81E-03	8.55E-09	
Hu7A4.v9.Fab	1.71E+06	6.86E-04	4.01E-10	8.08E+05	3.42E-03	4.23E-09	
Hu7A4.v12.Fab	3.32E+06	8.44E-04	2.55E-10	1.74E+06	3.31E-03	1.90E-09	
hu7A4.v15.Fab	9.10E+05	3.17E-04	3.48E-10	3.78E+05	0.001618	4.28E-09	11
Hu7G7.v1 Fab	1.44E+05	0.006594	4.58E-08	3.84E+04	0.007231	1.88E-07	4.4
Mu16F6.Fab	6.07E+04	1.90E-04	3.13E-09	5.11E+04	1.37E-03	2.68E-08	8.56
Hu16F6.v4.Fab	1.31E+05	1.69E-04	1.29E-09	9.89E+04	2.44E-03	2.47E-08	19.1

[00315] The binding epitope of the antibodies were re-confirmed as follows. A Tf-TfR blocking ELISA was performed in maxisorp plates coated with 2 µg/ml of purified human TfR in PBS at 4°C overnight. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and blocked using Superblock blocking buffer in PBS (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). 50 µl of 12.5 µM human holo-Tf (R&D Systems, Minneapolis, MN) was added to the plates for 40 min. A 50 µl titration of hu7A4.v15, hu15G11.v5, Tf competiting antibody, and hu7G7.v1 (beginning at 10 ug/ml, 1:3 serial dilution) was added to the plate and incubated for 20 min. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and 1:1000 diluted HRP-Goat-anti human Fcγ (Jackson ImmunoResearch) was added to the plate and incubated for 1 h at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and detected using TMB substrate (BioFX Laboratories, Owings Mills).

[00316] An HFE-TfR binding ELISA was performed in maxisorp plates coated with 1 μg/ml of HFE in PBS at 4°C overnight. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and blocked using Superblock blocking buffer in PBS (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). A titration of human TfR (start at 100 ug/ml, 1:3 serial dilution) was added to the plate and incubated for 1 h. 1μg/ml of hu15G11.v5, hu7A4.v15 or hu7G7.v1 was then added to the plate for 1 h. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and 1:1000 diluted HRP-Goat-anti human Fcγ (Jackson ImmunoResearch) was added the plate and incubated for 1 h at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and detected using TMB substrate (BioFX Laboratories, Owings Mills). An HFE-TfR blocking ELISA was performed in maxisorp plates coated with 1 μg/ml HFE in PBS at 4°C overnight. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and blocked using Superblock blocking buffer in PBS (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). In a NUNC™ plate, a titration of hu7A4.v15, hu15G11.v5, Tf competiting antibody, human holo-Tf and control IgG (400μg for all antibody, 8000μg/ml for holo transferrin, 1:3 serial dilution) was combined with 2 μg/ml of biotinylated human TfR and incubated for 1 h. The mixture was then added to the HFE coated plate for 1 h at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and 1:1000 diluted HRP-streptavidin (SouthernBiotech, Birmingham) was added the plate and incubated for 1 hour at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and biotinylated human TfR bound to the plate was detected using TMB substrate (BioFX Laboratories, Owings Mills).

[00317] Binding of these humanized variants to TfR was unaffected by the presence of 6.3 μM holo-Tf, whereas the binding of the Tf competing antibody that binds to the Tf binding site on TfR was inhibited (Figure 5). Further, humanized 7A4.v15, 15G11.v5 and 7G7.v1 could still bind HFE captured huTfR, indicating that they did not affect binding of huTfR to immobilized HFE (Figure 6A). In a related experiment, 7A4.v15 and 15G11.v5 did not block biotinylated TfR from binding to immobilized HFE. In contrast, this interaction was blocked by the Tf competing antibody and holo Tf (Figure 6B). HFE and Tf are known to share a similar epitope on TfR (*Bennet et al, Nature (2000) 403, 46-53*).

[00318] Immobilized 15G11v.5 and anti-TfR^{C12} were evaluated for binding to biotinylated human TfR ECD or monovalent M13 phage displaying the human TfR apical domain. Anti-TfR^{C12} was derived from a synthetic antibody phage library that was panned against human TfR ECD and binds to a site on the human TfR which competes with transferrin binding. Antibodies were coated at 1 μg/ml in PBS on Maxisorp plates. Bound biotinylated human TfR ECD or TfR-apical domain phage were detected with HRP-streptavidin (GE health care, RPN 4401V) or HRP-anti-M13 (GE health care, 27-9421-01), respectively. Figure 25 shows that 15G11v.5 binds to human TfR apical domain. The 15G11v.5 binding site was mapped to the apical domain, a site distant from the TfR ligand binding sites.

EXAMPLE 2: AFFINITY ENGINEERING HUMAN/CYNO CROSS-REACTIVE ANTI-TFR ANTIBODIES

[00319] In addition to the humanized variants described above, additional affinity engineered variants were made. Exemplified herein is affinity engineering of 15G11.v5 and 7A4.v15. Affinity variants were generated by making individual alanine substitutions in CDR-L3 or CDR-H3 using standard techniques. These variants were screened as IgG by ELISA and SPR to identify positions important for binding to human and cyno TfR; the monovalent affinity of selected variants as Fab was also determined. Ala scan variant IgGs or Fab were expressed in 293 cells and binding to human or cyno TfR quantified by ELISA in maxisorp plates coated with 1.8 µg/ml of goat anti-human Fcγ (Jackson ImmunoResearch) in PBS at 4°C overnight. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and blocked using Superblock blocking buffer in PBS (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). Supernatants containing expressed IgG were diluted serially 1:5 and added to the plate for 1 h. Purified hu15G11.v5 or hu7A4.v15 were used as standards (diluted 1:5 beginning at 1 ug/ml). Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and 1:1000 diluted HRP-Goat-anti kappa (Southern Biotech) was added the plate and incubated for 1 h at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and detected using TMB substrate (BioFX Laboratories, Owings Mills). Binding was also assessed by SPR, as described above. The results are shown in Figures 7A (15G11.v5 variants) and 7B (7A4.v15 variants).

[00320] Further variants of 15G11.v5 with individual alanine substitutions at positions in CDR-L1, CDR-L2, CDR-H1 and CDR-H2 were also generated, expressed and first screened for binding to human and cyno TfR by ELISA (Table 6). The Hu/Cy binding ELISA was performed in maxisorp plates coated with 2 µg/ml of purified human or cyno TfR in PBS at 4°C overnight. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and blocked using Superblock blocking buffer in PBS (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). Cell culture supernatants containing the expressed Ala scan variant IgGs were serially diluted 1:5 and added to the wells for 1 h. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and 1:1000 diluted HRP-Goat-anti human Fcγ (Jackson ImmunoResearch) was added the plate and incubated for 1 hour at room temperature. Plates were washed with PBS/0.05% Tween 20 and detected using TMB substrate (BioFX Laboratories, Owings Mills).

TABLE 6: ELISA Analysis of hu15G11.v5 IgG Ala Variants

			CynoTfR EC50 (ng/ml)	HuTfR EC50 (ng/ml)
		15G11.v5	1.8	0.8
R'		G26A	6.1	1.1

		Y27A	1467.1	21.1
		T28A	0.8	0.4
		F29A	12.5	1.5
		T30A	0.9	0.4
		S31A	0.1	0.05
		Y32A	1.4	0.4
		W33A	362.5	59.6
		M34A	1.1	0.4
HVR-H2		G49A	1.1	0.3
		E50A	409.7	20.6
		I51A	0.6	0.2
		N52A	0.9	0.3
		P52aA	8.1	3.9
		T53A	0.7	0.3
		R56A	5405.4	55.1
		N58A	80.4	6.3
		Y59A	0.7	0.3
		I60A	0.7	0.3
		E61A	0.6	0.2
		K62A	0.7	0.3
		F63A	0.6	0.4
		K64A	0.6	0.3
		S65A	0.7	0.2
HVRL1		R24A	0.4	0.1
		S26A	0.6	0.2
		D27A	0.8	0.2
		N28A	0.8	0.2
		L29A	0.9	0.3
		Y30A	1.0	0.3
		S31A	0.7	0.3
		N32A	4.0	1.6
		L33A	0.1	0.05
HVR-L2		D50A	0.5	0.2
		T52A	0.3	0.2
		N53A	0.6	0.3
		L54A	0.5	0.4
		D56A	0.5	0.3

[00321] Selected variants were then purified and their monovalent affinity for human or cyno TfR assessed by SPR (Table 7).

TABLE 7: Monovalent SPR Analysis of Select 15G11.v5 Fab Alanine Variants

	HuTfR			CynoTfR			Cy/hu
	Ka	Kd	KD	Ka	Kd	KD	ratio
Hu15G11.v5 Fab	6.74E+05	4.74E-03	7.03E-09	4.51E+05	1.27E-02	2.82E-08	4.0
Hu15G11.HC32A Fab	2.38E+05	1.78E-03	7.47E-09	1.77E+05	8.51E-03	4.80E-08	6.4
Hu15G11.HC34A Fab	5.64E+05	4.03E-03	7.14E-09	3.04E+05	9.90E-03	3.26E-08	4.6
Hu15G11.HC52A Fab	5.30E+05	2.36E-02	4.44E-08	4.87E+05	5.67E-02	1.17E-07	2.6
Hu15G11.HC52A Fab	5.64E+05	1.96E-02	3.46E-08	ND	ND	ND	ND
Hu15G11.HC51A Fab	4.33E+05	1.04E-02	2.39E-08	3.13E+05	3.29E-02	1.05E-07	4.4
Hu15G11.HC53A Fab	8.90E+05	1.15E-02	1.29E-08	4.84E+05	2.50E-02	5.18E-08	4.0
Hu15G11.HC54A Fab	2.06E+05	8.71E-03	4.24E-08	2.80E+05	1.69E-02	6.02E-08	1.4

EXAMPLE 3: BISPECIFIC ANTI-HUMAN TfR ANTIBODY CONSTRUCTION AND IN VITRO ANALYSIS

[00322] Certain of the foregoing antibody variants were reformatted as bispecific antibodies with a second arm specifically binding to BACE1. The anti-human TfR antibodies Hu15G11.v5, Hu15G11.LC92A , Hu15G11.HC52A and Hu15G11.HC53A were used to engineer the TfR binding arm of the bispecific using 'knob in hole' bispecific antibody construction technology (Carter, P. (2001) J. Immunol. Methods 248, 7–15; Ridgway, J. B., Presta, L. G., and Carter, P. (1996) Protein Eng. 9, 617–621; Merchant, A. M., Zhu, Z., Yuan, J. Q., Goddard, A., Adams, C. W., Presta, L. G., and Carter, P. (1998) Nat. Biotechnol. 16, 677–681; Atwell, S., Ridgway, J. B., Wells, J. A., and Carter, P. (1997) J. Mol. Biol. 270, 26–35). In addition to the knob and hole mutations in the Fc for anti-TfR (hole) and anti-BACE1 (knob), all half-antibodies contained mutations in the Fc region that abrogated effector function (N297G) and Hu15G11.v5 and Hu15G11.LC92A contained an additional Fc mutation that abrogated effector function (D265A). The knob and hole half-antibodies were purified separately from *E.coli* and combined at a 1:1.1 ratio of anti-TfR to prevent formation of anti-TfR homodimers. Assembly of the bispecific antibody was completed by reductive annealing for at least three days at room temperature in a buffer containing reduced glutathione at a 100x ratio to antibody and 200 mM arginine pH 8.0. Following assembly, bispecific antibodies were purified by hydrophobic interaction chromatography. The assembly was confirmed by liquid chromatography mass spectroscopy and SDS-PAGE. The purified antibodies were confirmed to be homogeneous and monodisperse by size exclusion and multi angle laser light spectroscopy.

[00323] The resulting bispecific antibodies were called 15G11.v5 (anti-TfR^{1}), 15G11.W92A (15G11.LC92A or anti-TfR^{2}), Hu15G11.N52A (anti-TfR^{52A}) and Hu15G11.T53A (anti-TfR^{53A}).

The monovalent affinity and kinetics for human and cyno TfR was determined for 115G11.v5 and 115G11.W92A by SPR, as above (see Table 9). Anti-TfR^1 and anti-TfR^2 possess similar monovalent binding affinities as anti-TfR^A and anti-TfR^D do for binding to mouse TfR (see Atwal et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* **3**, 84ra43 (2011); Yu et al., *Sci. Transl. Med.* 25 May 2011: Vol. 3, Issue 84, p. 84ra44).

TABLE 8: Monovalent SPR Analysis of 15G11.v5 (TfR^1) and 15G11.W92A (LC92A, TfR^2)

	HuTfR			CynoTfR			Cyno/ human ratio
	Ka	Kd	KD	Ka	Kd	KD	
Hu15G11.v5 Fab	6.74E+05	4.74E-03	7.03E-09	4.51E+05	1.27E-02	2.82E-08	4.0
Hu15G11.W92A Bispecific	1.28E+05	3.77E-02	2.95E-07	8.36E+04	5.20E-02	6.22E-07	2.1

[00324] Additionally, the binding affinity of the anti-TfR^1, anti-TfR^2, Hu15G11.N52A and Hu15G11.T53A bispecific antibodies were measured against human and cyno TfR by SPR as previously described. As shown in Table 9 below, Anti-TfR^{52A} and anti-TfR^{53A} have binding affinities to human and cyno TfR between $TfR1^{h15G11.v5}$ and $TfR2^{LC92A}$.

TABLE 9

Anti-cyno/human TfR antibodies (nM)		
	Human TfR	**Cyno TfR**
$TfR1^{h15G11.v5}$	10	37
$TfR2^{LC92A}$	270	810
TfR^{52A}	52	343
TfR^{53A}	24	143

EXAMPLE 4: IMPACT OF EFFECTOR-CONTAINING AND EFFECTORLESS MONOSPECIFIC AND BISPECIFIC ANTIBODIES ON A HUMAN ERYTHROLEUKEMIA CELL LINE AND PRIMARY BONE MARROW MONONUCLEAR CELLS

[00325] Prior studies in mice had determined that antibodies binding murine TfR with effector function and/or complement binding capabilities selectively depleted TfR-expressing reticulocytes. To ascertain whether the depletion observed in the mouse studies was unique to a murine system, further experiments were performed utilizing anti-TfR that bind to human TfR.

[00326] ADCC assays were carried out using peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from healthy human donors as effector cells. A human erythroleukemia cell line (HEL, ATCC) and primary human bone marrow mononuclear cells (AllCells, Inc.) were used as target cells. To minimize inter-donor variability which could potentially arise from allotypic differences at the residue 158 position in FcγRIIIA, blood donors were limited to those carrying the heterozygous RcγRIIIA genotype (F/V158) in the first set of experiments (Figure 8A-B). For the second set of experiments (Figure 9A-B), only HEL cells were used as the target cells, with PBMCs from healthy human donors carrying either the F/V158 genotype or the FcγRIIIA V/V158 genotype. The V/V158 genotype was also included in this assay due to the known association with increased NK cell-mediated ADCC activity as well as ability to bind IgG4 antibodies (Bowles and Weiner, 2005; Bruhns et al. 2008). Cells were counted and viability was determined by Vi-CELL® (Beckman Coulter; Fullerton, CA) following the manufacturer's instructions.

[00327] PBMCs were isolated by density gradient centrifugation using Uni-Sep™ blood separation tubes (Accurate Chemical & Scientific Corp.; Westbury, NY). Target cells in 50 µL of assay medium (RPMI-1640 with 1% BSA and 100 units/mL penicillin and streptomycin) were seeded in a 96-well, round-bottom plate at 4 x 10^4/well. Serial dilutions of test and control antibodies (50 µL/well) were added to the plates containing the target cells, followed by incubation at 37 °C with 5% CO_2 for 30 minutes to allow opsonization. The final concentrations of antibodies ranged from 0.0051 to 10,000 ng/mL following 5-fold serial dilutions for a total of 10 data points. After the incubation, 1.0 x 10^6 PBMC effector cells in 100 µL of assay medium were added to each well to give a ratio of 25:1 effector: target cells, and the plates were incubated for an additional 4 hours. The plates were centrifuged at the end of incubation and the supernatants were tested for lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) activity using a Cytotoxicity Detection Kit™ (Roche Applied Scinece; Indianapolis, IN). The LDH reaction mixture was added to the supernatants and the plates were incubated at room temperature for 15 minutes with constant shaking. The reaction was terminated with 1 M H_3PO_4, and absorbance was measured at 490 nm (the background, measured at 650 nm was subtracted for each well) using a SpectraMax Plus microplate reader. Absorbance of wells containing only the target cells served as the control for the background (low control), whereas wells containing target cells lysed with Triton-X100 provided the maximum signal available (high control). Antibody-independent cellular cytotoxicity (AICC) was measured in wells containing target and effector cells without the addition of antibody. The extent of specific ADCC was calculated as follows:

$$\% \text{ ADCC} = 100 \times \frac{A_{490}\text{ (Sample)} - A_{490}\text{ (AICC)}}{A_{490}\text{ (High Control)} - A_{490}\text{ (Low Control)}}$$

ADCC values of sample dilutions were plotted against the antibody concentration, and the dose-response curves were fitted to a four-parameter model using SoftMax Pro.

[00328] In a first set of experiments, the ADCC activity of various anti-human TfR constructs were assessed using either a human erythroleukemia cell line (HEL cells) or primary human bone marrow mononuclear cells as the target cells. Bivalent IgG1 effector function-competent anti-human TfR1 antibody 15G11, and a bispecific form of this antibody with an anti-BACE1 arm in a human IgG1 format containing D265A and N297G mutations to abrogate effector function (see Example 3), were tested at various concentrations in the ADCC assay, using anti-gD WT IgG1 as a negative control and murine anti-human HLA (class I) as a positive control. The results are shown in Figures 8A and 8B. With either the HEL cells as targets (Fig. 8A) or the bone marrow mononuclear cells as targets (Fig. 8B), the monospecific, effector positive anti-human TfR antibody 15G11 elicited significant ADCC activity. This activity was similar to that of the positive control anti-human HLA antibodies on the HEL cells, and at a robust yet lower level relative to the positive control on the bone marrow mononuclear cells. The somewhat lower level observed in the bone marrow mononuclear cells experiment is likely due to the fact that only a portion of the heterogeneous mixture of myeloid and erythroid lineage PBMC cells used in the experiment express high levels of TfR, whereas the HEL cells have consistently high TfR expression throughout the clonal cell population. In sharp contrast, the bispecific effectorless anti-humanTfR/BACE1 antibody did not display any ADCC activity in either HEL or bone marrow mononuclear cells, similar to the negative control.

[00329] In a second set of experiments, the impact of switching the antibody isotype in this assay system was assessed. The ADCC assay procedure was identical to that described above, with the exception that all target cells were HEL cells, and the effector cells were PBMCs from healthy human donors either carrying the heterozygous FcγRIIIa-V/F158 genotype or the homozygous FcγRIIIa-V/V158 genotype. All anti-human TfR tested were bispecific with anti-gD, on three different Ig backbones: wild-type human IgG1, human IgG1 with the N297G mutation, and human IgG4. An anti-Abeta antibody with a human IgG4 backbone was also tested, and mouse anti-human HLA (class I) served as a positive control. The results are shown in Figures 9A and 9B. As anticipated based on the known association between effector cell activation and the V/V158 genotype (Bowles and Weiner 2005), ADCC activity was more robustly elicited by V/V158 donor PBMCs (~ 45% of target cells impacted) relative to F/V158 donors (~ 25% of target cells impacted) (compare Fig. 9A to Fig. 9B). Anti-TfR/gD with the wild-type IgG1 induced robust ADCC in HEL cells, while the anti-TfR/gD with the effectorless IgG1 did not show any ADCC activity in HEL cells, replicating the results from the first set of experiments. Notably, at concentrations of 100 ng/mL or higher, anti-TfR/gD of the IgG4 isotype showed a mild ADCC

activity. This activity was not observed in the anti-Abeta IgG4 results, indicating that TfR binding was required for the ADCC activity. This finding correlates with previous reports that IgG4 has minimal, but measurable, effector function (Adolffson et al., J. Neurosci. 32(28):9677-9689 (2012); van der Zee et al. Clin Exp. Immunol. 64: 415-422 (1986)); Tao et al., J. Exp. Med. 173:1025-1028 (1991)).

EXAMPLE 5: ASSESSMENT OF BISPECIFIC ANTI-HUMAN TfR/BACE1 BISPECIFIC ANTIBODIES IN VIVO

A. Pharmacokinetic, Pharmacodynamic and Safety Study

[00330] To evaluate the drug concentrations, pharmacodynamics effects, and safety of the bispecific anti-human TfR antibodies *in vivo*, cynomolgus monkeys (*Macaca fascicularis*) were dosed with bispecific antibodies using anti-TfR antibody clone 15G11 paired with the same anti-BACE1 arm used in prior examples (anti-TfR^1/BACE1), or clone 15G11.LC92A paired with the same anti-BACE1 arm used in prior examples (anti-TfR^2/BACE1) or Hu15G11.N52A (anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1) and Hu15G11.T^{53A} (anti-TfR^{53A}/BACE1). These bispecific antibodies were in a human IgG1 format with N297G or D265A and N297G mutations abrogating effector function, as described previously. As a control, an anti-gD molecule on human IgG1 was used. This study was performed in non-human primates because crossreactivity of these anti-TfR antibodies is limited to non-human primates and humans. In addition, studies have shown that the mechanisms of drug transport between the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) and plasma compartments may be similar between humans and primates (Poplack et al, 1977). The antibodies were administered by a single intravenous (IV) bolus injection into the saphenous vein at a dose of 30 mg/kg to conscious cynomolgus monkeys with indwelling cisterna magna catheters. At various timepoints up to 60 days post-dose, plasma, serum, and (CSF) were sampled. Sample analysis included hematology (whole blood), clinical chemistry (serum), antibody concentrations (serum and CSF), and pharmacodynamic response to the antibody (plasma and CSF). See Figure 10 for a detailed sampling scheme.

[00331] The concentrations of the dosed antibodies in cynomolgus monkey serum and CSF were measured with an ELISA using a sheep anti-human IgG monkey absorbed antibody coat, followed by adding serum samples starting at a dilution of 1:100, and finished by adding a goat anti-human IgG antibody conjugated to horseradish peroxidase monkey adsorbed for detection. The assay had a standard curve range of 0.78-50 ng/mL and a limit of detection of 0.08 μg/mL. Results below this limit of detection were reported as less than reportable (LTR).

[00332] Figures 11A-B shows the results of the pharmacokinetic analysis for anti-TfR1/BACE1 and anti-TfR2/BACE1. The pharmacokinetic profile for anti-gD was as expected for a typical

human IgG1 antibody in cynomolgus monkey with a mean clearance of 3.98 mL/day/kg. Both anti-TfR/BACE1 antibodies cleared faster than anti-gD, likely due to peripheral target-mediated clearance. Anti-TfR1/BACE1 had the fastest clearance, consistent with it having the highest binding affinity to TfR, whereas anti-TfR2/BACE1 showed an improved pharmacokinetic profile (ie, prolonged exposure in serum) as compared to anti-TfR1/BACE1, likely due to its reduced affinity for TfR. The clearance for anti-TfR1/BACE1 and anti-TfR2/BACE1 were 18.9 mL/day/kg and 8.14 mL/day/kg, respectively. All antibodies were detected in the CSF at approximately one one-thousandth of the serum concentration. However, there was high variability, and overall no detectable difference in the CSF antibody concentrations across the molecules.

TABLE 10: Mean (± SD) PK parameter estimates for all test antibodies following a single IV bolus dose administration at 30 mg/kg in cynomolgus monkeys (n=5)

Antibody	AUC_{all} (day*µg/mL)	AUC_{inf} (day*µg/mL)	C_{max} (µg/mL)	CL (mL/day/kg)	V_{ss} (mL/kg)
anti-gD	7640 ± 1790	7930 ± 1910	912 ± 141	3.98 ± 1.05	51.3 ± 10.2
anti-TfR^1/BACE1	1610 ± 240	1610 ± 237	809 ± 132	18.9 ± 2.54	41.0 ± 8.18
anti-TfR^2/BACE1	3750 ± 528	3750 ± 530	850 ± 69.2	8.14 ± 1.21	41.2 ± 6.06

SD = standard deviation; IV = intravenous; AUC_{all} = area under the concentration-time curve from time 0 to the time of last measurable concentration; AUC_{inf} = area under the concentration-time curve extrapolated to infinity; C_{max} = observed maximum serum concentration; CL = clearance; V_{ss} = volume of distribution at steady state; Min = minimum; Max = maximum.

[00333] Figure 19 shows the results of the pharmacokinetic analysis for anti-TfR^1/BACE1, anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 and anti-TfR^{53A}/BACE1. All anti-TfR/BACE1 antibodies cleared faster than anti-gD, likely due to peripheral target-mediated clearance. Anti-TfR^1/BACE1 had the fastest clearance, consistent with it having the highest binding affinity to TfR, whereas anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 and anti-TfR^{53A}/BACE1 showed an improved pharmacokinetic profile (ie, prolonged exposure in serum) as compared to anti-TfR^1/BACE1, likely due to the reduced affinity for TfR of anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 and anti-TfR^{53A}/BACE1.

[00334] To look at the pharmacodynamic effect in response to anti-TfR/BACE1 dosing, we measured $Abeta_{1-40}$ and sAPPα and sAPPβ levels in cynomolgus monkey plasma and CSF. $Abeta_{1-40}$ was measured with an ELISA using an anti-$Abeta_{1-40}$ specific polyclonal antibody coat, followed by adding samples, and finishing by adding a mouse anti-human $Abeta_{1-40}$ monoclonal antibody conjugated to horseradish peroxidase for detection. The assay has a limit of detection of 60 pg/mL for plasma and 140 pg/mL for CSF. Results below this concentration were reported as less than reportable (LTR). CSF concentrations of sAPPα and sAPPβ were determined using the sAPPα/sAPPβ Multi-spot assay (Mesoscale Discovery (Gaithersburg, MD)). CSF was thawed on

ice, then diluted 1:10 into 1% BSA in TBS-T (10 mM Tris buffer, pH 8.0, 150 mM NaCl, 0.1% Tween-20). The assay was performed as per the manufacturer's protocol. The assay had lower limit of quantification values of 0.05 ng/ml for sAPPα and 0.03 ng/mL for sAPPβ.

[00335] Figures 12A-E summarize the pharmacodynamics behavior of the antibodies. In the periphery, plasma $Abeta_{1-40}$ levels remained unchanged following anti-gD adiminstration, but transiently decreased following anti-TfR/BACE1 administration. Both variants reduced plasma $Abeta_{1-40}$ levels, with a maximal inhibition of 50% achieved 1 day post-dosing. Plasma $Abeta_{1-40}$ levels gradually recovered, with animals given anti-TfR^1/BACE1 returning to baseline $Abeta_{1-40}$ levels around 14 days post-dose. $Abeta_{1-40}$ levels returned to baseline levels between 21 and 30 days post-dose in animals treated with anti-TfR^2/BACE1. Both anti-TfR/BACE1 antibodies reduced CSF $Abeta_{1-40}$ levels, with no change observed in anti-gD dosed animals. Anti-TfR^1/BACE1 administration resulted in a more significant decrease in CSF $Abeta_{1-40}$ levels (average maximal inhibition 50% of baseline) than that of anti-TfR^2/BACE1 (average maximal inhibition 20% of baseline). sAPPβ production was inhibited in anti-TfR/BACE1 treated animals, but not in animals who received anti-gD. Similar to results for Aβ40, anti-TfR^1/BACE1 had a stronger inhibitory effect on sAPPβ production than anti-TfR^2/BACE1. sAPPα production was stimulated during BACE1 inhibition by both anti-TfR^1/BACE1 and anti-TfR^2/BACE1, and the response correlated inversely with the level of inhibition observed for sAPPβ and $Abeta_{1-40}$. SAPPα and sAPPβ are the primary processing products of amyloid precursor protein (APP), and their levels are highly correlated. The ratio of sAPPβ/sAPPα normalizes the results to potential changes in basal APP expression or potential preanalytical differences in CSF collection and handling over the course of the study. The ratio of CSF sAPPβ/sAPPα with anti-TfR^1/BACE1 demonstrated a more robust PD effect than anti-TfR^2/BACE1. Thus, these results support target (i.e. BACE1) engagement by the anti-TfR/BACE1 antibodies.

[00336] The PD response for anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 and anti-TfR^{53A}/BACE1 also correlates with the duration of antibody exposure and a reduced affinity TfR arm shows increased reduction in $Aβ_{40}$ (data not shown). These data also support target engagement by these bispecific antibodies .

[00337] Overall, these results suggest that a bispecific anti-TfR/BACE1 antibody with an affinity for human TfR between that of anti-TfR^1/BACE1 and anti-TfR^2/BACE1 would likely have a desirable pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic balance.

[00338] No safety signals were observed in this study. There were no evident effects on any hematology or clinical chemistry parameters of monkeys given 30 mg/kg of any bispecific antibody administered up to 60 days post-dose. Importantly, reticulocyte levels were unaffected by treatment with either anti-TfR^1/BACE1 or anti-TfR^2/BACE1 (Figure 13), as expected since

these antibodies were effector-function-impaired and the overall level of circulating early reticulocytes with high TfR levels is very low in normal primates (see Example 4).

EXAMPLE 6: ASSESSMENT OF BISPECIFIC ANTI-HUMAN TfR/BACE1 BISPECIFIC ANTIBODIES IN VIVO

[00339] To examine the relationship between antibody pharmacodynamics in CSF and pharmacokinetics in brain, cynomolgus monkeys (*Macaca fascicularis*) were dosed with bispecific antibodies anti-TfR^1/BACE1 or anti-TfR^2/BACE1, as in the previous example. These bispecific antibodies were in a human IgG1 format with D265A and N297G mutations abrogating effector function. As a control, an anti-gD molecule on human IgG1 was used. For comparison, we also dosed with a bivalent anti-BACE1 antibody, which is the same clone used for the bispecific antbibodies. The antibodies were administered by a single intravenous (IV) bolus injection into the saphenous vein at a dose of 30 mg/kg to conscious cynomolgus monkeys with indwelling cisterna magna catheters. Baseline CSF samples were collected 24 and 48 hours prior to dosing, and another CSF sample was collected 24 hours post-dose (as shown schematically in Figure 14). Following CSF collection 24 hours post-dose, animals were perfused with saline and brains were harvested for analysis of antibody concentrations. Different brain regions were homogenized in 1% NP-40 (Cal-Biochem) in PBS containing Complete Mini EDTA-free protease inhibitor cocktail tablets (Roche Diagnostics). Homogenized brain samples were rotated at 4°C for 1 hour before spinning at 14,000 rpm for 20 minutes. The supernatant was isolated for brain antibody measurement, using the ELISA method described in the previous example. Blood was also collected to confirm peripheral exposure and pharmacodynamics responses, which were similar to our observations in Example 5.

[00340] The pharmacodynamic effects of anti-TfR^1/BACE1 and anti-TfR^2/BACE1 as assessed in CSF were also similar to that observed in the previous example. Figure 15 demonstrates that the ratio of CSF sAPPβ/sAPPα decreased robustly following dosing with anti-TfR^1/BACE1. Anti-TfR^2/BACE1 did not show an evident decrease at 24 hours post-dose in this study. Anti-BACE1 also showed no effect. Analysis of brain concentrations of antibody revealed that both the control IgG and the anti-BACE1 antibody had limited uptake into the brain, at levels that were just above detection in our assay (average ~670 pM). Anti-TfR^2/BACE1 had ~3-fold improved brain uptake over control IgG (average ~2 nM), and anti-TfR^1/BACE1 had the best brain uptake, ~15-fold greater than control IgG (average ~10 nM). The brain antibody concentrations for the different antibodies correlated with the pharmacodynamics response seen in CSF in our studies, with anti-TfR^1/BACE1 having the best brain uptake and most robust pharmacodynamics effect, and anti-TfR^2/BACE1 having less brain uptake and a more modest effect.

[00341] These results extend our previous findings to demonstrate that TfR-binding bispecific antibodies improve uptake in brain of non-human primates. In primates, as in mice, there is likely an optimum affinity to TfR that best balances brain uptake and TfR-mediated clearance. In our example, the higher affinity anti-TfR^1/BACE1 demonstrates good brain uptake, and is affected by peripheral target-mediated clearance. The reduced affinity TfR^2/BACE1 has improved clearance properties, but appears to have such low binding for TfR as to not be able to be efficiently transported by TfR (much in the same way that the lowest-affinity anti-TfR antibody TfR^E in US2012/0171120 passes some affinity threshold beyond which the affinity is too low to permit sufficient interaction between the antibody and TfR such that the antibody would remain associated with TfR as TfR begins the translocation process). From the results of this experiment, an anti-human/cyno TfR/BACE1 bispecific antibody having affinity for TfR between that of TfR^1 and TfR^2 would be predicted to have improved uptake and clearance properties over either anti-TfR^1/BACE1 or anti-TfR^2/BACE1 in this system.

EXAMPLE 7: CREATION OF ADDITIONAL EFFECTORLESS MUTATIONS IN THE CONTEXT OF A BISPECIFIC TRANSFERRIN RECEPTOR ANTIBODY

[00342] Other mutations in the Fc region,which abrogate effector function in addition to N297G and D265A were tested for their ability to reduce or prevent depletion of TfR-expressing reticulocytes. Specifically, the Fc mutations L234A, L235A and P329G ("LALAPG") which are described in US Application Publication No 2012/0251531, which is incorporated herein by reference, were incorporated into the anti-TfR^D/BACE1 antibody (which is described in International Application Publication No. WO 2013/177062, and which is incorporated by reference herin in its entirety).

[00343] Pharmacokinetic analysis and reticulocyte count following a single antibody administration in mice were performed as follows. Wild type female C57B/6 mice ages 6-8 weeks were used for all studies. The animals' care was in accordance with institutional guidelines. Mice were dosed intravenously with a single 50mg/kg dose of either an anti-gD antibody (murine IgG2a) with the LALAPG mutations, an anti-TfR^D/BACE1 antibody (rat/murine chimera) with the LALAPG mutations. Total injection volume did not exceed 250µL and antibodies were diluted in D-PBS when necessary (Invitrogen). After 24 hours, whole blood was collected prior to perfusion in EDTA microtainer tubes (BD Diagnostics), allowed to sit for 30 minutes at room temperature, and spun down at 5000x g for 10 minutes. The top layer of plasma was transferred to new tubes for antibody measurements.

[00344] Total antibody concentrations in mouse plasma was measured using an anti-mouse IgG2a (allotype a)/ anti-mouse IgG2a (allotype a) ELISA. NUNC 384-well Maxisorp

immunoplates (Neptune, NJ) were coated with mouse anti-mouse IgG2a allotype A, an allotype A specific antibody (BD/Pharmigen San Jose, CA), overnight at 4°C. Plates were blocked with PBS, 0.5% BSA for 1 hour at 25°C Each antibody (anti-gD and the anti- TfR/BACEl bispecific variants) was used as a standard to quantify respective antibody concentrations. Plates were washed with PBS, 0.05% Tween-20 using a microplate washer (Bio-Tek Instruments, Inc., Winooski, VT), and standards and samples diluted in PBS containing 0.5% BSA, 0.35 M NaCl, 0.25% CHAPS, 5 mM EDTA, 0.2% BgG, 0.05% Tween-20 and 15 ppm Proclin® (Sigma-Aldrich) were added for two hours at 25°C. Bound antibody was detected with biotin-conjugated mouse anti-mouse IgG2a allotype A, an allotype A specific antibody (BD/Pharmigen San Jose, CA). Bound biotin-conjugated antibody was detected with horseradish peroxidase-conjugated streptavidin (GE Helathcare Life Sciences, Pittsburgh, PA). Samples were developed using 3,3',5,5'- tetramethyl benzidine (TMB) (KPL, Inc., Gaithersburg, MD) and absorbance measured at 450 nm on a Multiskan Ascent reader (Thermo Scientific, Hudson, NH). Concentrations were determined from the standard curve using a four-parameter non-linear regression program. The assay had lower limit of quantification (LLOQ) values of 78.13 ng/ml in plasma. Statistical analysis of differences between experimental groups was performed using a two-tailed unpaired t-test.

[00345] Upon administration of the anti-TfR^D/BACE1 antibodies containing the Fc LALAPG mutations, the mice displayed no clinical symptoms as had been previously observed using antibodies with full effector function. See Couch *et al.*, *Sci. Trans. Med.* 5:183ra57 (2013). Figure 20 shows the results of the pharmacokinetic analysis.

[00346] Additionally, immature and total reticulocyte counts were determined using the Sysmex XT2000iV (Sysmex, Kobe, Japan) according to manufacturer's instructions. At 24 hours post dose, there was no observed difference in the immature reticulocyte fraction or the total reticulocyte count with any antibody tested as seen in Figure 21. These results suggest that the LALAPG mutation not only abrogates antibody effector function but also reduces complement binding and complement-mediated reticulocyte clearance seen even with an effectorless antibody framework (Couch *et al.* 2013). This is consistent with another report that incorporation of the LALA mutation on a human IgG1 can limit complement binding (Hessell *et al.* Nature 449:101-104 (2007)).

EXAMPLE 8 - CREATION OF $FcRn^{HIGH}$ BISPECIFIC VARIANTS

[00347] In order to increase the half-life of the bispecific antibodies, and thereby potentially increase the concentration of the antibody in the brain, bispecific variants were made containing mutations in the IgG constant domain and specifically in the Fc Receptor-neonate (FcRn) binding domain ($FcRn^{HIGH}$ mutations). The FcRn binding domain has been implicated in the maternal-fetal

transfer of antibodies. *See* Story *et al.*, *J. Exp. Med.*, 180:2377 2381, 1994. The amino acid substitutions in the FcRn binding domain increase the affinity of the constant domain for the FcRn thereby increasing the half-life of the antibody.

[00348] FcRn binding domain mutations M252Y, S254T and T256E (YTE) have been described to increase FcRn binding and thus increase the half-life of antibodies. *See* U.S. Published Patent Application No. 2003/0190311 and Dall'Acqua *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 281:23514-23524 (2006). Additionally, FcRn binding domain mutations N434A and Y436I (AI) have been described to also increase FcRn binding. *See* Yeung *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 182: 7663-7671 (2009). The YTE (M252Y/S254T/T256E) and AI (N434/Y436I) mutations were incorporated into both anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 and anti-TfR^{2}/BACE1 bispecific antibodies containing either WT human IgG1 or effectorless LALAPG or N297G mutations. In addition, $FcRn^{HIGH}$ mutation were made in the anti-gD hIgG1 antibody as a control. Mutations were constructed using Kunkel mutatgenesis, antibodies were expressed transiently in CHO cells, and proteins were purified using protein A chromatography followed by size exlucsion chromatography (SEC).

[00349] Binding of $FcRn^{HIGH}$ variant antibodies to FcRn was measured uing BIAcore. Human and cynomolgus monkey FcRn proteins were expressed in CHO and purified using IgG affinity chromatography. Data were acquired on a BIAcore T200 instrument. A series S sensor chip CM5 (GE Healthcare, Cat. BR100530) was activated with EDC and NHS reagents according to the supplier's instructions, and anti-Fab antibody (Human Fab capture kit, GE Health care Bio-science. AB SE-75184, upsala, Sweden) was coupled to achieve approximately 10,000 response units (RU), followed by blocking un-reacted groups with 1 Methanolamine. For affinity measurements, antibodies were first injected at a 10 µl/min flow rate to capture approximately 1000 RU on 3 different flow cells (FC), except for FC1 (reference), and then 2-fold serial dilutions of human FcRn (or Cyno FcRn) in pH6 buffer (0.1M sodium phosphate), from low (1 nM) to high (25 µM) were injected (flow rate: 30 µl/min) one after the other in the same cycle with no regeneration between injections. Sensograms were recorded and subject to reference and buffer subtraction before evaluating by using BIAcore T200 Evaluation Software (version 2.0). Affinities were determined by analyzing the level of binding at steady state based on a 1:1 binding model. Binding affinities for LALAPG, N297G, LALAPG.YTE, and LALAPG.AI variants of anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 are shown in Table 11 below. The data show that the $FcRn^{HIGH}$ variants enhance affinity at endosomal (pH 6) to both human and cyno FcRn.

TABLE 11

Antibody	Effector Funcion	FcRn High	Human FcRn	Cyno FcRn
			KD at pH6 (uM)	KD at pH6 (uM)
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgG1	WT	WT		
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgG1.N297G	N297G	WT	1.3	2.1
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgG1.LALAPG	LALAPG	WT	0.8	1.2
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgG1.N297G.YTE	N297G	YTE		
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgG1.LALAPG.YTE	LALAPG	YTE	0.2	0.2
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgG1.N297G.AI	N297G	N434A/Y436I		
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgLALAPG.AI	LALAPG	N434A/Y436I	0.6	0.4
Anti-TfR.52A/BACE1.hIgG1.N297G.A	N297G	N434A		
Anti-TfR2/BACE1.hIgG1.N297G	N297G	WT	1.7	2.1
Anti-TfR2/BACE1.hIgG1.LALAPG	LALAPG	WT	1.1	1.2
Anti-TfR2/BACE1.hIgG1.LALAPG.YTE	LALAPG	YTE	0.3	0.2
Anti-gD.hIgG1	WT	WT	0.7	0.9
Anti-gD.hIgG1.YTE	WT	YTE		
Anti-gD.hIgG1.AI	WT	N434A/Y436I	0.3	0.4
Anti-gD.hIgG1.A	WT	N434A	0.1	0.7

[00350] Select FcRnHIGH variants will be tested in cynomologus monkeys to determine whether enhancement of FcRn affinity can increase improve the pharmacokinetic properties and/or increase the brain exposure of the anti-TfR/BACE1 antibodies.

[00351] To evaluate the safety of the effectorless and $FcRn^{HIGH}$ mutations, certain bispecific antibodies were administered to human transferrin receptor knock-in mice which express the human transferrin receptor. The huTfR knock-in mice were generated as follows. The construct for targeting human *TFRC* cDNA into the C57BL/6 *Tfrc* locus in ES cells was made using a combination of recombineering (Warming *et al.* Molecular and Cellular Biology vol. 26 (18) pp. 6913-22 2006; Liu *et al* Genome Research (2003) vol. 13 (3) pp. 476-84) and standard molecular cloning techniques.

[00352] Briefly, a cassette (human *TFRC* cDNA, SV40 pA, and frt-PGK-em7-Neo-BGHpA-frt) flanked by short homologies to the mouse *Tfrc* gene was used to modify a *Tfrc* C57BL/6J BAC (RP23 BAC library) by recombineering. The human *TFRC* cDNA cassette was inserted at the endogenous ATG and the remainder of *Tfrc* exon 2 plus the beginning of intron 2 was deleted. The targeted region in the BAC was then retrieved into pBlight-TK (Warming *et al.* Molecular and Cellular Biology vol. 26 (18) pp. 6913-22 2006) along with flanking genomic *Tfrc* sequences as homology arms for ES cell targeting. Specifically, the 2950 bp 5' homology arm corresponds to

(assembly NCBI37/mm9): chr.16:32,610,333-32,613,282 and the 2599 bp 3' homology arm corresponds to chr.16:32,613,320-32,615,918. The final vector was confirmed by DNA sequencing.

[00353] The Tfrc/TFRC KI vector was linearized with NotI and C57BL/6N C2 ES cells were targeted using standard methods (G418 positive and gancyclovir negative selection). Positive clones were identified using PCR and taqman analysis, and confirmed by sequencing of the modified locus. Correctly targeted ES cells were transfected with a Flpe plasmid to remove Neo and ES cells were then injected into blastocysts using standard techniques. Germline transmission was obtained after crossing resulting chimaeras with C57BL/6N females..

[00354] Specifically, the antibodies listed in the table below were administered to huTfR knock-in mice in a single 50mg/kg dose and 24 hours later blood was drawn and reticulocytes. huIg1, N297G

TABLE 12

Antibody	Isotype	Number of Mice
Anti-gD	huIg1, N297G	6
anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1	huIgG1, N297G	6
anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1	huIgG1, LALAPG	6
anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1	huIgG1, LALAPG/YTE	6
anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1	huIgG1, LALAPG/AI	6

[00355] Following administration of the anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 LALAPG, LALAPG/YTE or LALAPG/AI antibodies (Groups 3-5 in Table 12), human TfR knock-in mice displayed no clinical symptoms or reticulocyte loss (Figure 22) as previously observed using anti-TfR antibodies with full effector function (Couch *et al.* 2013). These results indicate that incorporation of the LALAPG mutation on the human IgG1 framework also abrogates effector function, and further suggest that addition of either the YTE or AI FcRn^{HIGH} mutations do not interfere with the desired properties of the LALAPG mutations to render the antibody effectorless.

[00356] ADCC assays were also carried out to confirm the effectorless status of LALAPG, LALAPG/YTE, and LALAPG/AI mutation combinations in a human-derived cell line. As previously, human erythroleukemia cell line (HEL, ATCC) was used as target cells with PBMCs from healthy human donors carrying either the F/V158 genotype or the FcγRIIIA V/V158 genotype. The V/V158 genotype was also included in this assay due to the known association with increased NK cell-mediated ADCC activity as well as ability to bind IgG4 antibodies (Bowles and Weiner, 2005; Bruhns et al. 2008). Cells were counted and viability was determined by Vi-CELL® (Beckman Coulter; Fullerton, CA) following the manufacturer's instructions.

[00357] PBMCs were isolated by density gradient centrifugation using Uni-Sep™ blood separation tubes (Accurate Chemical & Scientific Corp.; Westbury, NY). Target cells in 50 µL of assay medium (RPMI-1640 with 1% BSA and 100 units/mL penicillin and streptomycin) were seeded in a 96-well, round-bottom plate at 4 x 10^4/well. Serial dilutions of test and control antibodies (50 µL/well) were added to the plates containing the target cells, followed by incubation at 37 °C with 5% CO_2 for 30 minutes to allow opsonization. The final concentrations of antibodies ranged from 0.0051 to 10,000 ng/mL following 5-fold serial dilutions for a total of 10 data points. After the incubation, 1.0 x 10^6 PBMC effector cells in 100 µL of assay medium were added to each well to give a ratio of 25:1 effector: target cells, and the plates were incubated for an additional 4 hours. The plates were centrifuged at the end of incubation and the supernatants were tested for lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) activity using a Cytotoxicity Detection Kit™ (Roche Applied Science; Indianapolis, IN). The LDH reaction mixture was added to the supernatants and the plates were incubated at room temperature for 15 minutes with constant shaking. The reaction was terminated with 1 M H_3PO_4, and absorbance was measured at 490 nm (the background, measured at 650 nm was subtracted for each well) using a SpectraMax Plus microplate reader. Absorbance of wells containing only the target cells served as the control for the background (low control), whereas wells containing target cells lysed with Triton-X100 provided the maximum signal available (high control). Antibody-independent cellular cytotoxicity (AICC) was measured in wells containing target and effector cells without the addition of antibody. The extent of specific ADCC was calculated as follows:

$$\% \text{ ADCC} = 100 \times \frac{A_{490}\text{ (Sample)} - A_{490}\text{ (AICC)}}{A_{490}\text{ (High Control)} - A_{490}\text{ (Low Control)}}$$

ADCC values of sample dilutions were plotted against the antibody concentration, and the dose-response curves were fitted to a four-parameter model using SoftMax Pro.

[00358] Results of the ADCC assay are shown in Figure 23. As expected, the effector positive anti-human TfR antibody (anti-TfR^1/gD IgG1 WT) elicited significant ADCC activity on the HEL cells. In contrast, the anti-TfR^{52A}/BACE1 antibody variants containing LALAPG, LALAPG/YTE, or LALAPG/AI mutations did not display any ADCC activity in HEL cells, similar to the negative control anti-TfR^{52A} /gD N297G antibody.

EXAMPLE 9 – MODIFICATION OF ANTI-TfR BISPECIFIC ANTIBODY SEQUENCES

[00359] A mutation in heavy chain variable region FR4, methionine at position 108 changed to leucine (M108L), may be incorporated to promote stability of an anti-TfR antibody.

Binding affinity of an anti-TfR Fab comprising the M108L mutation was similar to the unmodified Fab, as shown in Table 13.

Table 13: Binding affinity of anti-TfR Fab

	ka (1/Ms)	kd (1/s)	KD (M)
antiTfR.52A.Fab	3.71E+05	0.0204	5.50E-08
antiTfR.52A.M108L.Fab	3.20E+05	0.02312	7.22E-08

[00360] It is expected that a bispecific antibody comprising an anti-TfR arm comprising an anti-TfR^2.hIgG1.LALAPG.YTE heavy chain having an M108L mutation (SEQ ID NO: 160) will be more stable than the bispecific antibody comprising the same anti-TfR arm without the M108L heavy chain mutation, while also retaining binding affinity for TfR.

[00361] Although the foregoing invention has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity of understanding, the descriptions and examples should not be construed as limiting the scope of the invention. The disclosures of all patent and scientific literature cited herein are expressly incorporated in their entirety by reference.

Table of Certain Sequences

SEQ ID NO	Descripton	Sequence
158	Anti-TfR^{52A} M108L heavy chain variable region	EVQLVQSGAE VKKPGASVKV SCKASGYTFT SYWMHWVRQA PGQRLEWIGE IAPTNGRTNY IEKFKSRATL TVDKSASTAY MELSSLRSED TAVYYCARGT RAYHYWGQGT LVTVSS
159	Anti-TfR^{2} M108L heavy chain variable region	EVQLVQSGAE VKKPGASVKV SCKASGYTFT SYWMHWVRQA PGQRLEWIGE INPTNGRTNY IEKFKSRATL TVDKSASTAY MELSSLRSED TAVYYCARGT RAYHYWGQGT LVTVSS
160	Anti-TfR^{2}/Ag2.hIgG1.LALAPG.YTE. M108L bispecific antibody anti-TfR heavy chain Ag2 = antigen 2	EVQLVQSGAE VKKPGASVKV SCKASGYTFT SYWMHWVRQA PGQRLEWIGE INPTNGRTNY IEKFKSRATL TVDKSASTAY MELSSLRSED TAVYYCARGT RAYHYWGQGT LVTVSSASTK GPSVFPLAPS SKSTSGGTAA LGCLVKDYFP EPVTVSWNSG ALTSGVHTFP AVLQSSGLYS LSSVVTVPSS SLGTQTYICN VNHKPSNTKV DKKVEPKSCD KTHTCPPCPA PEAAGGPSVF LFPPKPKDTL YITREPEVTC VVVDVSHEDP EVKFNWYVDG VEVHNAKTKP REEQYNSTYR VVSVLTVLHQ DWLNGKEYKC KVSNKALGAP IEKTISKAKG QPREPQVYTL PPSREEMTKN QVSLSCAVKG FYPSDIAVEW ESNGQPENNY KTTPPVLDSD GSFFLVSKLT VDKSRWQQGN VFSCSVMHEA LHNHYTQKSL SLSPGK
161	Anti-TfR^{2}/Ag2.hIgG1.LALAPG.YTE bispecific antibody anti-TfR light chain	DIQMTQSPSS LSASVGDRVT ITCRASDNLY SNLAWYQQKP GKSPKLLVYD ATNLADGVPS RFSGSGSGTD YTLTISSLQP EDFATYYCQH FAGTPLTFGQ GTKVEIKRTV AAPSVFIFPP SDEQLKSGTA SVVCLLNNFY PREAKVQWKV DNALQSGNSQ ESVTEQDSKD STYSLSSTLT LSKADYEKHK VYACEVTHQG LSSPVTKSFN RGEC
162	Anti- TfR^{52A} light chain variable region	DIQMTQSPSS LSASVGDRVT ITCRASDNLY SNLAWYQQKP GKSPKLLVYD ATNLADGVPS RFSGSGSGTD YTLTISSLQP EDFATYYCQH FWGTPLTFGQ GTKVEIK
163	Anti- TfR^{2} light chain variable region	DIQMTQSPSS LSASVGDRVT ITCRASDNLY SNLAWYQQKP GKSPKLLVYD ATNLADGVPS RFSGSGSGTD YTLTISSLQP EDFATYYCQH FAGTPLTFGQ GTKVEIK

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. An isolated antibody that binds to human transferrin receptor (TfR) and primate TfR, wherein the antibody comrpises a heavy chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 158 or SEQ ID NO: 159.

2. The isolated antibody of claim 1, wherein the antibody comprises a light chain variable reigon amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 162 or SEQ ID NO: 163.

3. The isolated antibody of claim 1, wherein the antibody comprises a heavy chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 158 and a light chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 162, or a heavy chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 159 and a light chain variable region amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 163.

4. The isolated antibody of any one of claims 1 to 3, wherein the antibody does not inhibit the binding of transferrin to TfR, and wherein one or more properties of the antibody have been modified to reduce or eliminate the impact of the antibody on reticulocytes and/or reduce the severity or presence of acute clinical symptoms in a subject or mammal treated with the antibody.

5. The antibody of any one of the preceding claims, which is a monoclonal antibody.

6. The antibody of any one of the preceding claims, which is an antibody fragment that binds human TfR and primate TfR.

7. The antibody of claim 4, wherein the one or more properties are selected from the effector function of the antibody Fc region, the complement activation function of the antibody, the half-life of the antibody and the affinity of the antibody for TfR.

8. The antibody of claim 7, wherein the one or more properties are selected from the effector function of the antibody Fc region and the complement activation function of the antibody, and wherein the effector function or complement activation function has been reduced or eliminated relative to a wild-type antibody of the same isotype.

9. The antibody of claim 8, wherein the effector function is reduced or eliminated by a method selected from reduction of glycosylation of the antibody, modification of the antibody isotype to an isotype that naturally has reduced or eliminated effector function, and modification of the Fc region.

10. The antibody of claim 9, wherein the glycosylation of the antibody is reduced by a method selected from: production of the antibody in an environment that does not permit wild-type glycosylation; removal of carbohydrate groups already present on the antibody; and modification of the antibody such that wild-type glycosylation does not occur.

11. The antibody of claim 10, wherein the antibody is produced in a non-mammalian cell production system, or where the antibody is produced synthetically.

12. The antibody of claim 10, wherein the Fc region of the antibody comprises a mutation at position 297 such that the wild-type asparagine residue at that position is replaced with another amino acid that interferes with glycosylation at that position.

13. The antibody of claim 9, wherein the effector function is reduced or eliminated by at least one modification of the Fc region.

14. The antibody of claim 13, wherein the effector function or complement activation function is reduced or eliminated by deletion of all or a portion of the Fc region, or by engineering the antibody such that it does not include an Fc region or non-Fc region competent for effector function or complement activation function.

15. The antibody of claim 13, wherein the modification is selected from: a point mutation of the Fc region to impair binding to one or more Fc receptors selected from the following positions: 234, 235, 238, 239, 248, 249, 252, 254, 265, 268, 269, 270, 272, 278, 289, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 301, 303, 322, 324, 327, 329, 333, 335, 338, 340, 373, 376, 382, 388, 389, 414, 416, 419, 434, 435, 437, 438, and 439; a point mutation of the Fc region to impair binding to C1q selected from the following positions: 270, 322, 329, and 321; eliminating some or all of the Fc region, and a point mutation at position 132 of the CH1 domain.

16. The antibody of claim 15, wherein the modification is at least one point mutation of the Fc region to impair binding to one or more Fc receptors selected from 234, 235, 265, 297 and 329.

17. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the modification is at positions 297 or 265 and 297.

18. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the modification is at positions 234, 235 and 329.

19. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the modification is N297G; D265A and N297A or D265A and N297G.

20. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the modification is L234A, L235A, and P329G.

21. The antibody of claim 7 or 8, wherein the one or more properties is the half-life of the antibody.

22. The antibody of claim 21 wherein the half-life is increased by a modification in the FcRn binding domain of the antibody at a position selected from: 252, 254, 256, 434 and 436.

23. The antibody of claim 22, wherein the modification is at positions 252, 254 and 256.

24. The antibody of claim 22, wherein the modification is at positions 434 and 436.

25. The antibody of claim 23, wherein the modification is M252Y, S254T and T256E.

26. The antibody of claim 24, wherein the modification is N434A and Y436I.

27. The antibody of any one of the preceding claims, wherein the antibody is combined with a further compound that mitigates or contributes to the reduction of impact on reticulocyte levels or acute clinical symptoms

28. The antibody of claim 27, wherein the further compound protects reticulocytes from antibody-related depletion or supports the growth, development, or reestablishment of reticulocytes.

29. The antibody of claim 28, wherein the further compound is selected from erythropoietin (EPO), an iron supplement, vitamin C, folic acid, and vitamin B12, or is red blood cells or reticulocytes.

30. The antibody of claim 7, wherein the affinity of the antibody for TfR is decreased, as measured relative to a wild-type antibody of the same isotype not having lowered affinity for TfR.

31. The antibody of any one of the preceding claims, wherein the antibody has a KD or IC50 for TfR of about 1 pM to about 100 μM, or about 10 nM to 100 nM, or about 20 nM to 100 nM.

32. The antibody of any one of the preceding claims, wherein the antibody is coupled to a therapeutic compound.

33. The antibody of claim 32, wherein the antibody is a multispecific antibody and the therapeutic compound optionally forms one portion of the multispecific antibody.

34. The antibody of claim 33, wherein the multispecific antibody comprises a first antigen binding site which binds TfR and a second antigen binding site which binds a brain antigen.

35. The antibody of claim 34, wherein the multispecific antibody comprises a first heavy chain comprising the sequence of SEQ ID NO: 160 and a first light chain comprising the sequence of SEQ ID NO: 161.

36. The antibody of claim 34 or claim 35, wherein the brain antigen is selected from the group consisting of: beta-secretase 1 (BACE1), Abeta, epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), tau, apolipoprotein E (ApoE), alpha-synuclein, CD20, huntingtin, prion protein (PrP), leucine rich repeat kinase 2 (LRRK2), parkin, presenilin 1, presenilin 2, gamma secretase, death receptor 6 (DR6), amyloid precursor protein (APP), p75 neurotrophin receptor (p75NTR), and caspase 6.

37. The antibody of any one of claims 34 to 36, wherein the multispecific antibody binds both TfR and BACE1.

38. The antibody of any one of claims 34 to 36, wherein the multispecific antibody binds both TfR and Abeta.

39. The antibody of claim 32, wherein the therapeutic compound is a neurological disorder drug.

40. An isolated nucleic acid encoding the antibody of any one of claims 1 to 39.

41 A host cell comprising the nucleic acid of claim 53.

42. A method of producing an antibody comprising culturing the host cell of claim 41 so that the antibody is produced and optionally further comprising recovering the antibody from the host cell.

43. A pharmaceutical formulation comprising the antibody of any one of claims 1 to 39 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

44. The antibody of any one of claims 1 to 39 for use as a medicament.

45. The antibody of any one of claims 1 to 39 for use in treating a neurological disorder.

46. The antibody of claim 45, wherein the neurological disorder is selected from the group consisting of a neuropathy disorder, a neurodegenerative disease, cancer, an ocular disease disorder, a seizure disorder, a lysosomal storage disease, amyloidosis, a viral or microbial disease, ischemia, a behavioral disorder, and CNS inflammation.

47. The antibody of any one of claims 1 to 39 for use in transporting one or more compounds across the BBB.

48. Use of the antibody of any one of claims 1 to 39 in the manufacture of a medicament for treating a neurological disorder.

49. The use of claim 48, wherein the neurological disorder is selected from the group consisting of a neuropathy disorder, a neurodegenerative disease, cancer, an ocular disease disorder, a seizure disorder, a lysosomal storage disease, amyloidosis, a viral or microbial disease, ischemia, a behavioral disorder, and CNS inflammation.

50. Use of the antibody of any one of claims 1 to 39 in the manufacture of a medicament for transporting one or more compounds across the BBB.

51. A method of transporting a compound across the BBB in a subject comprising exposing an antibody of any one of claims 32 to 39 to the BBB such that the antibody transports the compound coupled thereto across the BBB.

52. A method of increasing exposure of the CNS of a subject to a compound, comprising exposing an antibody of any one of claims 32 to 39 to the BBB such that the antibody transports the compound coupled thereto across the BBB.

53. A method of increasing retention in the CNS of a compound administered to a subject, comprising exposing an antibody of any one of claims 32 to 39 to the BBB such that the retention in the CNS of the compound is increased.

54. A method of treating a neurological disorder in a mammal comprising treating the mammal with an antibody of any one of claims 32 to 39.

55. The method of claim 54, wherein the neurological disorder is selected from the group consisting of a neuropathy disorder, a neurodegenerative disease, cancer, an ocular disease disorder, a seizure disorder, a lysosomal storage disease, amyloidosis, a viral or microbial disease, ischemia, a behavioral disorder, and CNS inflammation.

56. The method of any one of claims 51 to 55, wherein the BBB or neurological disorder is in a human subject.

57. The method of claim 56, wherein the dose amount and/or frequency of administration is modulated to reduce the concentration of antibody to which the red blood cells are exposed.

58. The method of claim 56 or claim 57, further comprising the step of monitoring the subject for depletion of red blood cells.

59. The method of any one of claims 56 to 58, wherein the antibody coupled to the compound is administered at a therapeutic dose.

60. The method of claim 59, wherein the therapeutic dose is TfR-saturating.

61. The method of any one of claims 56 to 60, wherein administration of the antibody is at a dose and/or dose frequency calibrated to minimize acute clinical symptoms of the antibody administration.

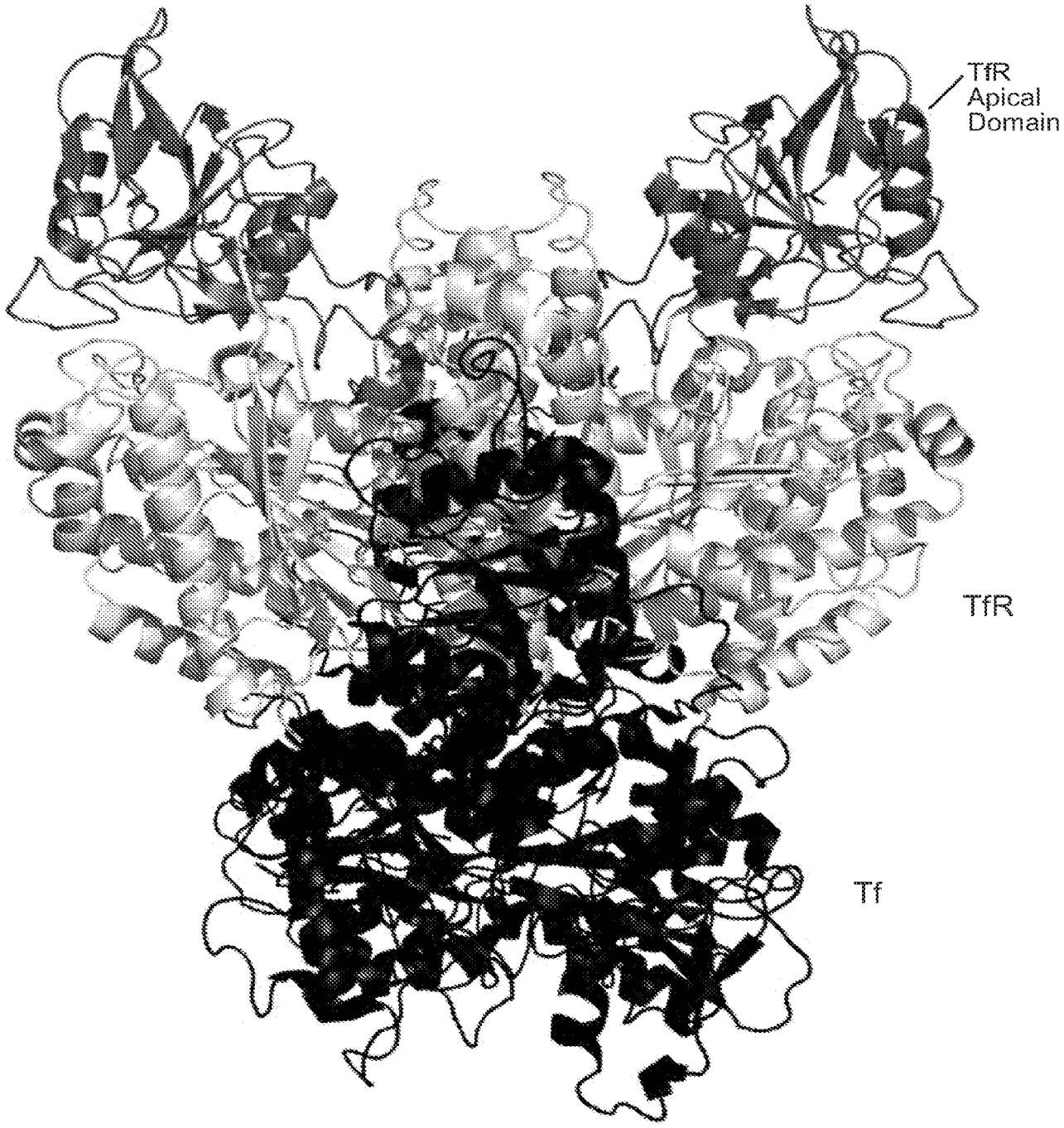


FIG. 1

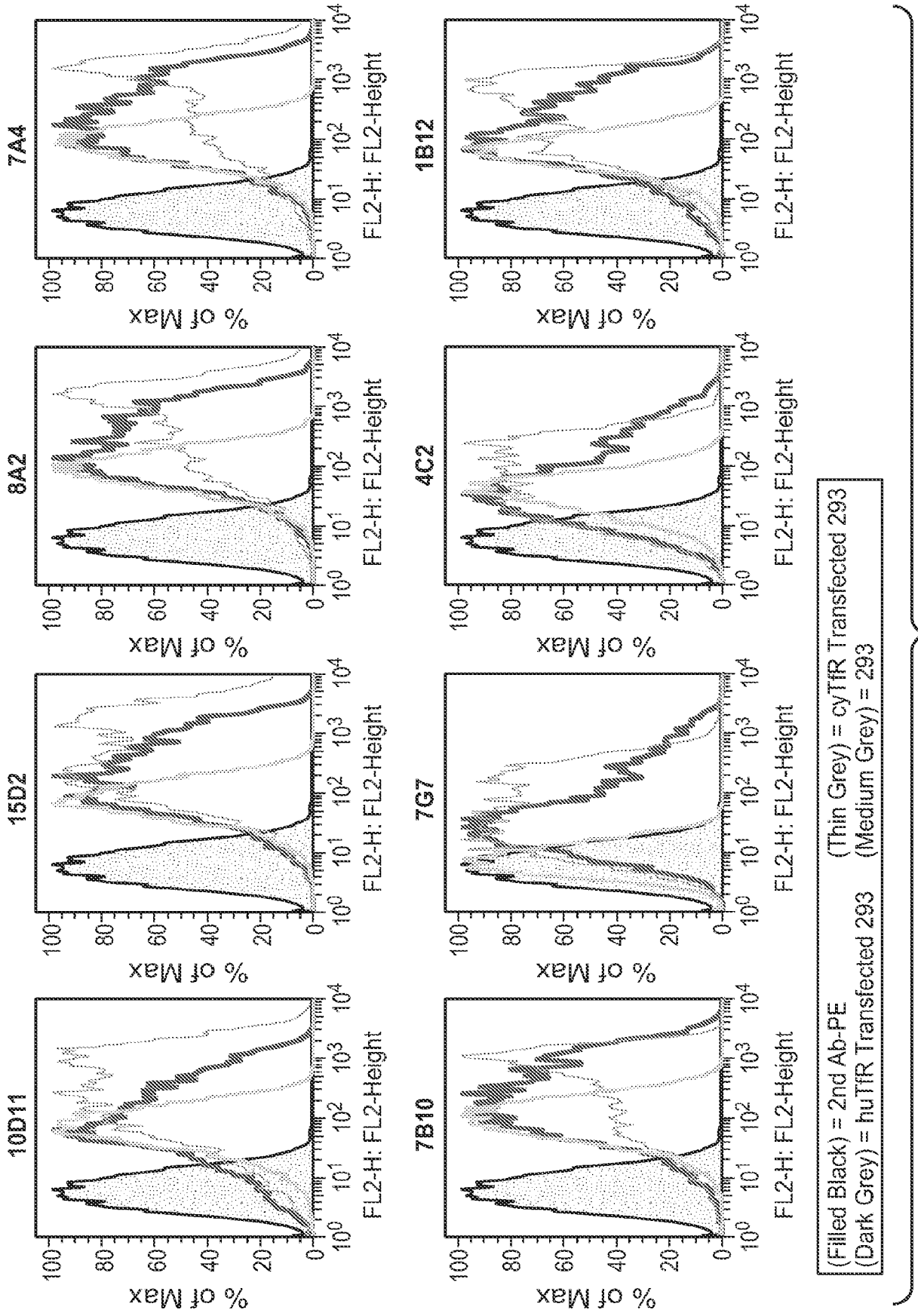

10D11
15D2
8A2
7A4
7B10
7G7
4C2
1B12
% of Max
FL2-H: FL2-Height
(Filled Black) = 2nd Ab-PE
(Dark Grey) = huTfR Transfected 293
(Thin Grey) = cyTfR Transfected 293
(Medium Grey) = 293

FIG. 2A

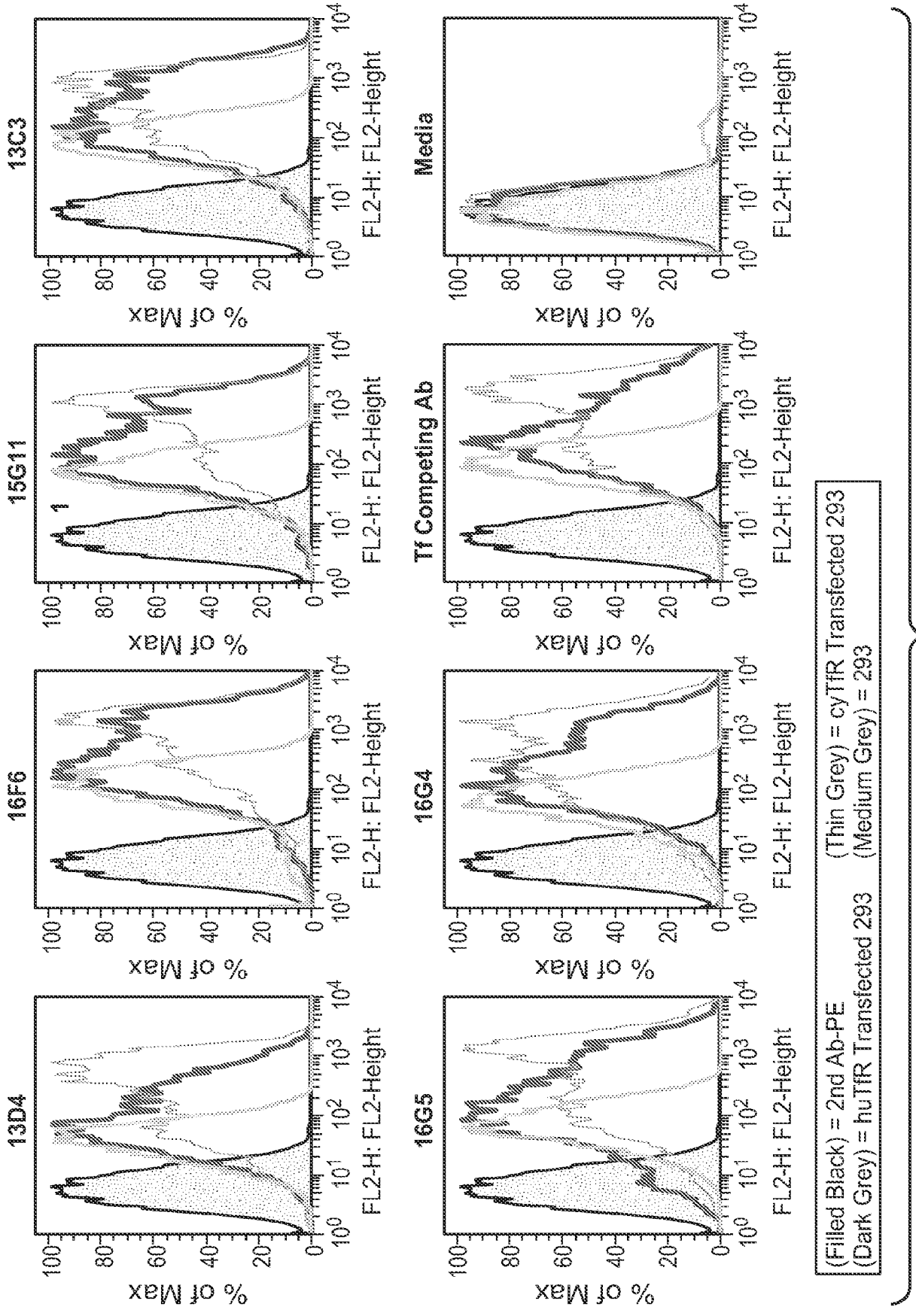

13C3
15G11
1
Media
16F6
Tf Competing Ab
13D4
16G4
16G5
% of Max
FL2-H: FL2-Height
(Filled Black) = 2nd Ab-PE
(Dark Grey) = huTfR Transfected 293
(Thin Grey) = cyTfR Transfected 293
(Medium Grey) = 293

FIG. 2B

Characterization of Human- and Cynomolgous Monkey-cross-reactive Anti-TfR Hybridomas that Don't Compete with Tf Binding to TfR

		Competes with Apical Domain Binder	huTfR ELISA Binding	Cyno TfR ELISA Binding	Biacore of Hybridoma or Chimeric IgG						
					huTfR			CynoTfR			Cy/hu KD Ratio
					Ka	Kd	KD	Ka	Kd	KD	
Class I	**7A4**	+++	+++	+++	2.11E+06	4.34E-04	2.06E-10	1.06E+06	6.63E-04	6.27E-10	3.04
	8A2	+++	+++	+++	1.22E+06	2.17E-04	1.79E-10	7.91E+05	7.15E-04	9.04E-10	5.06
	7A4 HC/8A2 LC	+++	+++	+++	3.01E+06	3.35E-04	1.12E-10	1.32E+06	1.22E-03	9.25E-10	8.29
	1502	+++	+++	+++							
	10D11	+++	+++	+++	1.66E+05	3.44E-04	2.08E-09	6.46E+04	5.81E-03	8.99E-08	43.32
	7B10	+++	+++	+++							
Class II	**15G11**	+++	+++	+++	8.90E+05	8.83E-04	9.92E-10	1.29E+06	3.35E-03	2.60E-09	2.62
	13C3	+++	+++	+++							
	16G5	+++	+++	+++							
	16G4	+++	+++	+++	4.77E+05	1.62E-03	3.40E-09	2.33E+05	5.23E-03	2.24E-08	6.59
Class III	**16F6**	+++	+++	+++	1.36E+05	2.81E-04	2.07E-09	1.23E+05	9.13E-04	7.45E-09	3.6
Class IV	**7G7**	-	+++	+++	1.33E+05	6.08E-03	4.57E-08	4.63E+04	1.21E-02	2.62E-07	5.73E
	4C2	-	+++	+++							
	1B12	-	+++	++	1.36E+05	2.76E-04	2.03E-09	1.34E+05	5.80E-03	4.34E-08	21.35
	13D4	-	+++	++	9.99E+04	9.49E-04	9.50E-09	7.06E+04	5.98E-04	8.47E-09	0.89

FIG. 2C

Light Chain Variable Region

CDR L1 - Contact
CDR L1 - Chothia
CDR L1 - Kabat

Kabat Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	27a	27b	27c	27d	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38
7A4	D	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	Q	R	A	T	I	S	C	R	A	S	E	S	V	D	D	Y	G	N	S	F	M	H	W	Y	Q	Q
8A2	D	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	Q	R	A	T	I	S	C	R	A	S	E	S	V	D	S	Y	G	N	S	F	M	H	W	Y	Q	Q
15D2	D	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	Q	R	A	T	I	S	C	R	A	S	E	S	V	D	S	Y	G	N	S	F	M	H	W	Y	Q	Q
10D11	D	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	Q	R	A	T	I	S	C	R	A	S	E	S	V	D	S	Y	G	P	S	F	M	H	W	Y	Q	Q
7B10	D	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	Q	R	A	T	I	S	C	R	A	S	E	S	V	D	D	Y	G	N	S	F	M	H	W	Y	Q	Q

CDR L2 - Contact
CDR L2 - Chothia
CDR L2 - Kabat

Kabat Number	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80
7A4	K	P	G	Q	P	P	K	L	L	I	Y	R	A	S	N	L	E	S	G	I	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	R	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	N	P	V	E	A
8A2	K	P	G	Q	P	P	K	L	L	I	Y	R	A	S	N	L	E	S	G	I	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	R	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	N	P	V	E	A
15D2	K	P	G	Q	P	P	K	L	L	I	Y	R	A	S	N	L	E	S	G	I	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	R	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	N	P	V	E	A
10D11	K	P	G	Q	P	P	K	L	L	I	Y	R	A	S	N	L	E	S	G	I	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	R	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	N	P	V	E	A
7B10	K	P	G	Q	P	P	K	L	L	I	Y	R	A	S	N	L	E	S	G	I	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	R	T	D	F	T	L	T	I	N	P	V	E	A

CDR L3 - Contact
CDR L3 - Chothia
CDR L3 - Kabat

Kabat Number	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	
7A4	D	D	V	A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	Q	S	N	E	A	P	P	T	F	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	R	SEQ ID NO: 4
8A2	D	D	V	A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	Q	S	N	E	G	P	P	T	F	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	SEQ ID NO: 5
15D2	D	D	V	A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	Q	S	N	E	G	P	P	T	F	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	SEQ ID NO: 5
10D11	D	D	V	A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	S	N	E	D	P	P	T	F	G	G	G	T	R	L	E	I	K	SEQ ID NO: 6
7B10	D	D	V	A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	Q	S	N	E	A	P	P	T	F	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	R	SEQ ID NO: 4

FIG. 3A-1

Heavy Chain Variable Region

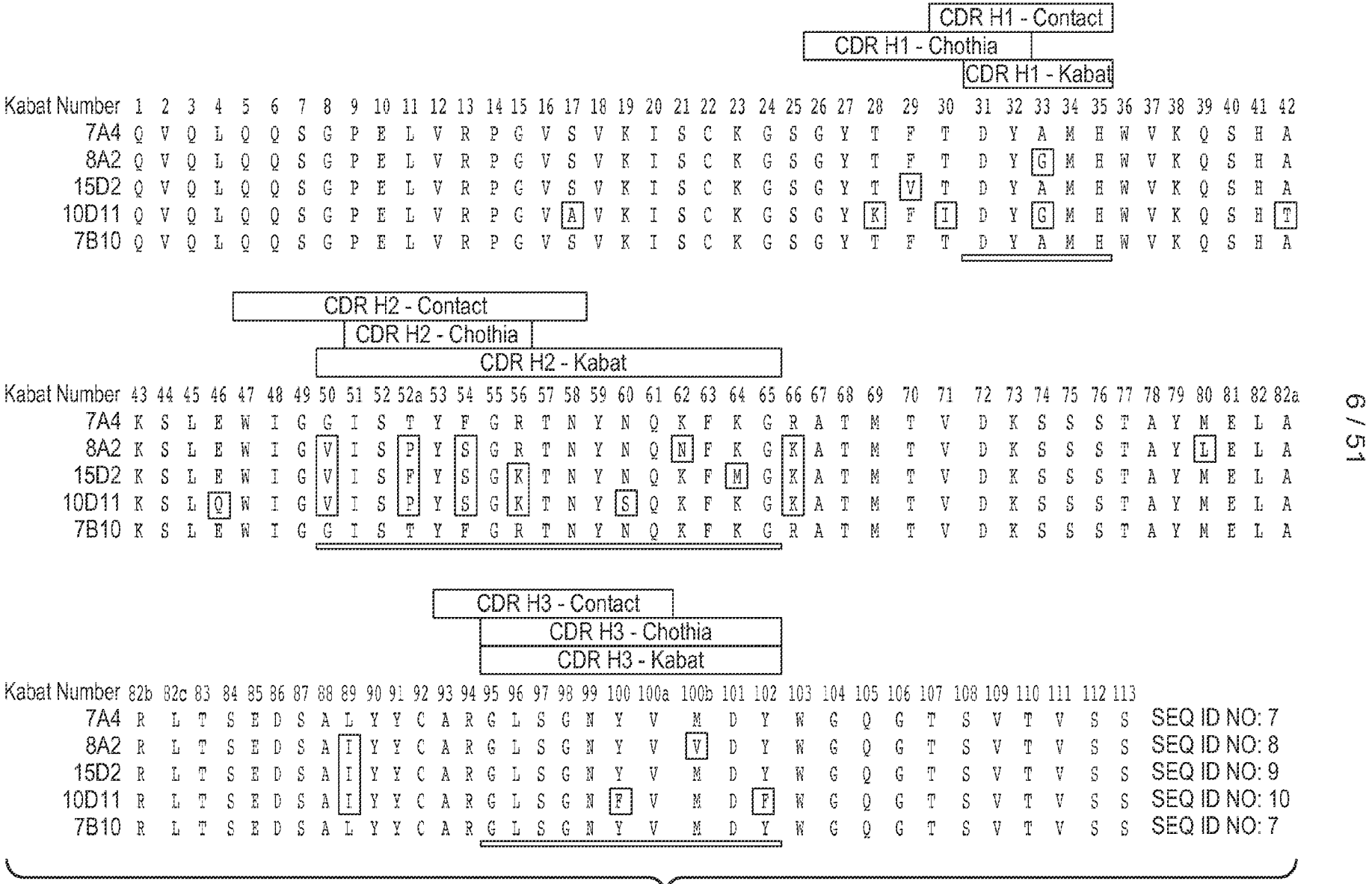


FIG. 3A-2

Light Chain Variable Region

CDR L1 - Contact
CDR L1 - Chothia
CDR L1 - Kabat

Kabat Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42
15G11	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	S	V	S	V	G	E	T	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	D	N	L	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	Q	G	K
16G5	D	I	Q	L	T	Q	T	P	A	S	L	S	V	S	V	G	E	T	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	E	N	I	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	Q	G	K
13G3	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	S	V	S	V	G	E	T	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	D	N	I	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	Q	G	K
16G4	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	S	V	S	V	G	E	T	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	D	N	I	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	Q	G	K

CDR L2 - Contact
CDR L2 - Chothia
CDR L2 - Kabat

Kabat Number	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84
15G11	S	P	Q	L	L	V	Y	D	A	T	N	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	Q	Y	S	L	K	I	N	S	L	Q	S	E	D	F	G
16G5	S	P	Q	L	L	V	Y	A	A	T	D	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	R	G	S	G	S	G	T	Q	Y	S	L	K	I	N	S	L	Q	S	E	D	F	G
13G3	S	P	Q	L	L	V	Y	A	A	T	N	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	Q	Y	S	L	K	I	N	S	L	Q	S	E	D	F	G
16G4	S	P	Q	L	L	V	Y	A	V	T	N	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	Q	Y	S	L	K	I	N	S	L	Q	S	E	D	F	G

CDR L3 - Contact
CDR L3 - Chothia
CDR L3 - Kabat

Kabat Number	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	
15G11	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	T	F	G	A	G	T	K	L	E	L	K	SEQ ID NO: 11
16G5	S	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	T	F	G	A	G	T	K	L	E	L	I	SEQ ID NO: 12
13G3	S	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	M	F	G	S	G	T	K	L	E	L	K	SEQ ID NO: 13
16G4	S	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	T	F	G	A	G	T	K	L	E	L	K	SEQ ID NO: 14

FIG. 3B-1

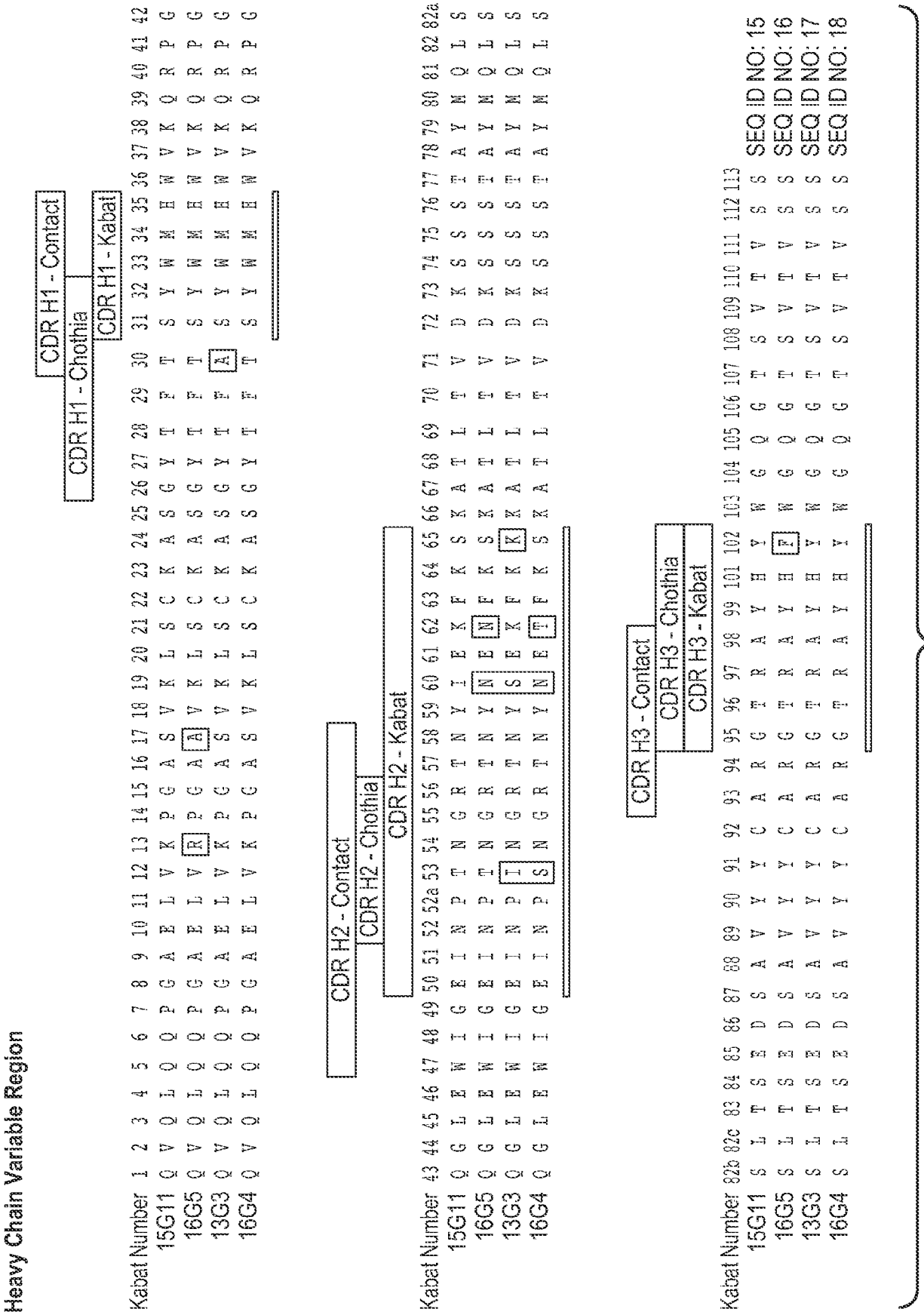

Heavy Chain Variable Region
CDR H1 - Contact
CDR H1 - Chothia
CDR H1 - Kabat
CDR H2 - Contact
CDR H2 - Chothia
CDR H2 - Kabat
CDR H3 - Contact
CDR H3 - Chothia
CDR H3 - Kabat
SEQ ID NO: 15
SEQ ID NO: 16
SEQ ID NO: 17
SEQ ID NO: 18

FIG. 3B-2

Light Chain Variable Region

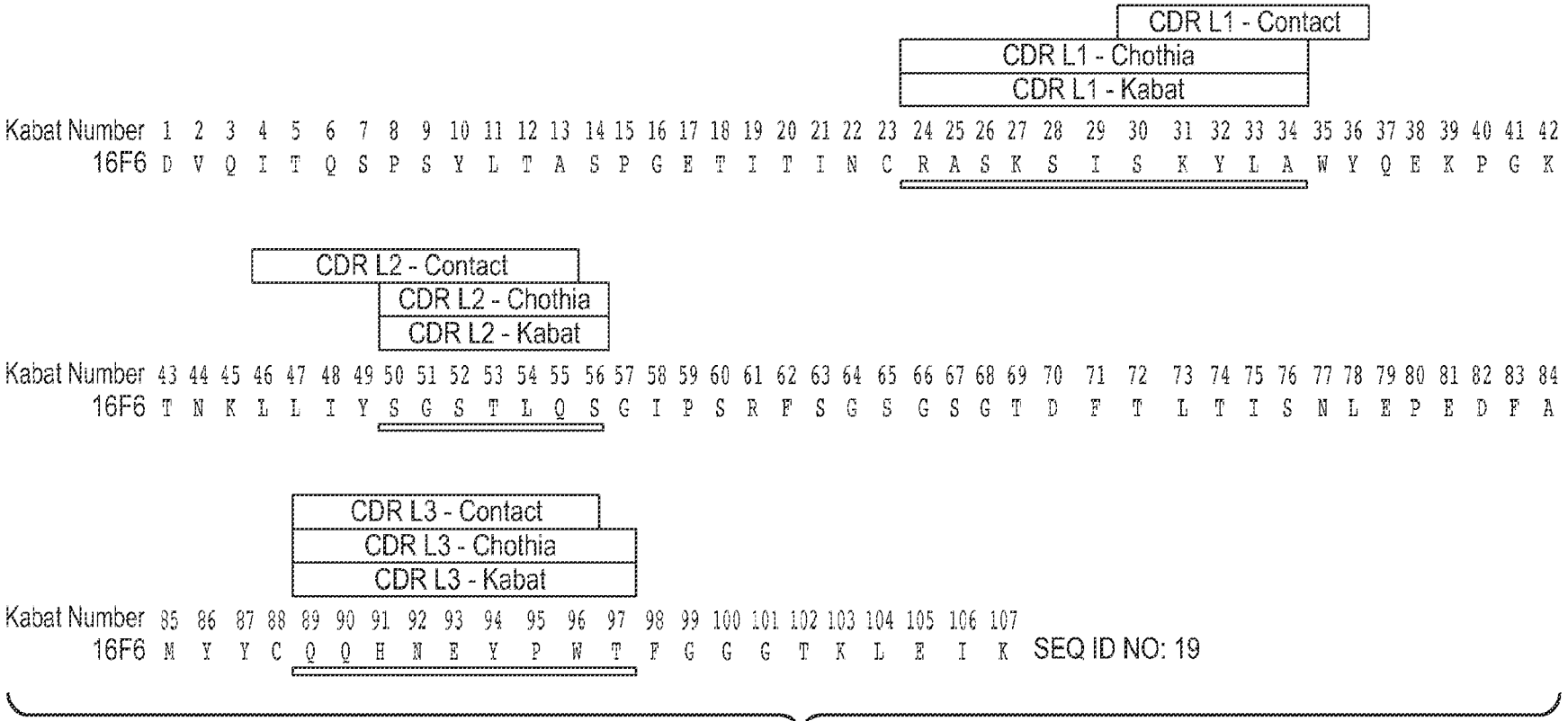


FIG. 3C-1

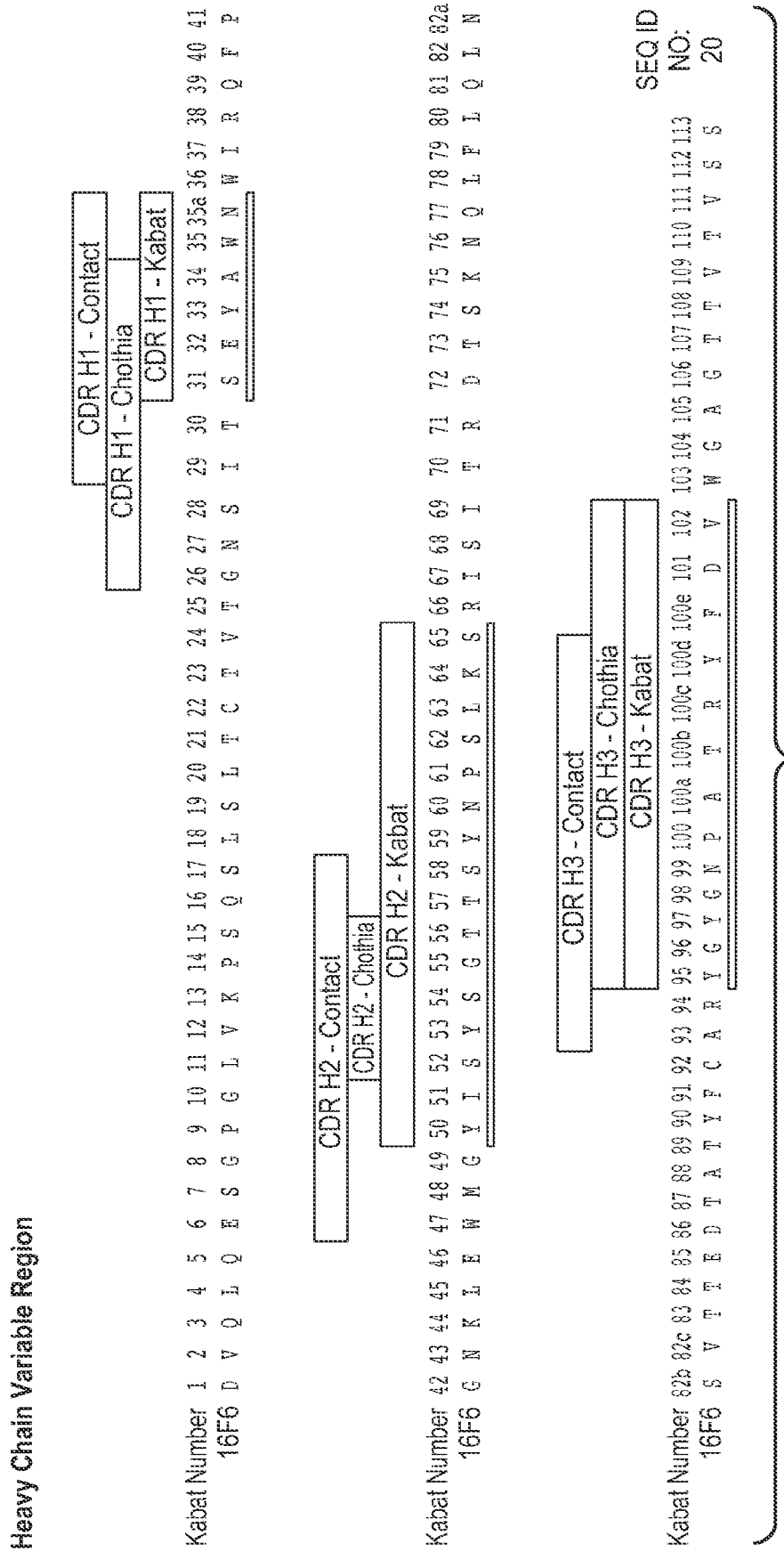

Heavy Chain Variable Region
CDR H1 - Contact
CDR H1 - Chothia
CDR H1 - Kabat
CDR H2 - Contact
CDR H2 - Chothia
CDR H2 - Kabat
CDR H3 - Contact
CDR H3 - Chothia
CDR H3 - Kabat
Kabat Number 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 35a 36 37 38 39 40 41
16F6 D V Q L Q E S G P G L V K P S Q S L S L T C T V T G N S I T S E Y A W N W I R Q F P
Kabat Number 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 82a
16F6 G N K L E W M G Y I S Y S G T T S Y N P S L K S R I S I T R D T S K N Q L F L Q L N
Kabat Number 82b 82c 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 100a 100b 100c 100d 100e 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113
16F6 S V T T E D T A T Y F C A R Y G Y G N P A T R Y F D V W G A G T T V T V S S
SEQ ID NO: 20

FIG. 3C-2

Light Chain Variable Region

CDR L1 - Contact
CDR L1 - Chothia
CDR L1 - Kabat

Kabat Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	27a	27b	27c	27d	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38
7G7	D	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	Q	R	A	T	I	S	C	R	A	R	Q	S	V	S	T	S	S	Y	S	F	M	H	W	Y	R	Q
4C2	D	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	S	L	A	V	S	L	G	Q	R	A	T	I	S	C	R	A	R	Q	S	V	S	T	S	S	Y	S	F	M	H	W	Y	[Q]	Q
1B12	Q	I	V	L	T	Q	S	P	A	I	M	S	A	S	L	G	G	R	V	T	M	T	C	T	T	S	S	S	.	.	.	V	P	S	S	Y	F	H	W	Y	Q	Q
13D4	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	T	T	S	S	L	S	A	S	L	G	D	R	V	T	I	N	C	R	A	G	Q	.	.	.	.	D	I	T	N	Y	L	N	W	F	Q	Q

CDR L2 - Contact
CDR L2 - Chothia
CDR L2 - Kabat

Kabat Number	39	40	41	41	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80
7G7	K	A	G	Q	P	P	K	L	L	I	K	Y	A	S	I	Q	E	S	G	V	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	N	I	L	P	V	E	E
4C2	K	[P]	G	Q	P	P	K	L	L	I	K	Y	A	S	I	Q	E	S	G	V	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	F	T	L	N	I	L	P	V	E	E
1B12	K	P	G	S	S	P	K	L	W	I	Y	S	T	S	N	L	A	S	G	V	P	A	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	S	Y	S	L	T	I	S	S	M	E	A
13D4	K	P	D	G	T	V	K	L	L	I	Y	Y	T	S	R	L	H	S	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	Y	S	L	T	I	T	N	L	E	Q

CDR L3 - Contact
CDR L3 - Chothia
CDR L3 - Kabat

Kabat Number	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	
7G7	E	D	T	A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	T	W	E	I	P	F	T	F	G	S	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	SEQ ID NO: 21
4C2	E	D	T	A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	T	W	E	I	P	F	T	F	G	S	G	T	[N]	L	E	I	K	SEQ ID NO: 22
1B12	E	D	A	A	T	Y	Y	C	H	Q	Y	H	R	S	P	F	T	F	G	S	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	SEQ ID NO: 23
13D4	E	D	I	A	T	Y	F	C	Q	Q	A	N	T	L	P	Y	T	F	G	G	G	T	K	L	E	I	K	SEQ ID NO: 24

FIG. 3D-1

Heavy Chain Variable Region

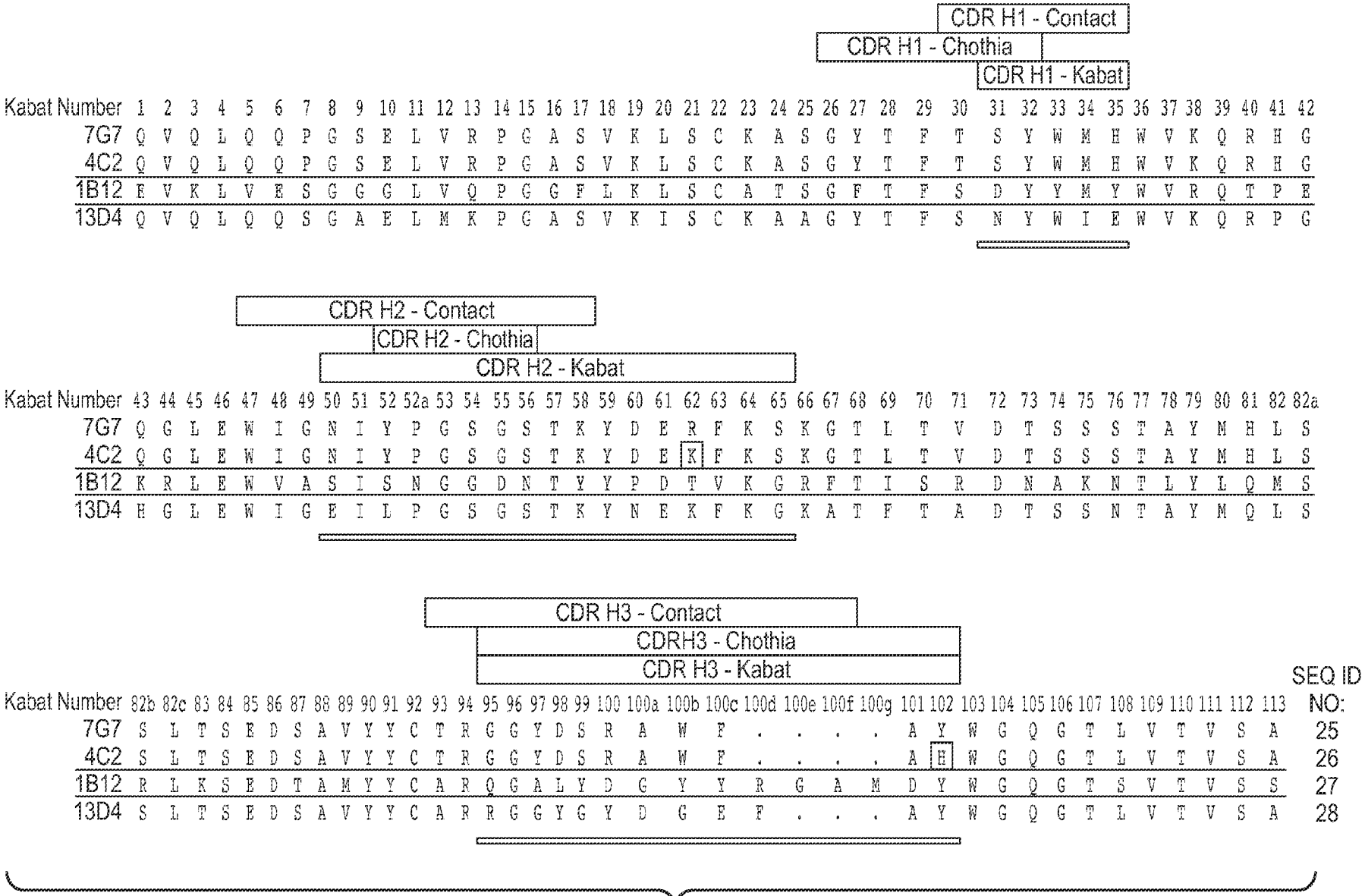


FIG. 3D-2

Humanization of 15G11 to Generate hu15G11.v5

Light Chain, Kappa: Mouse Antibody Aligned to Human Germlines

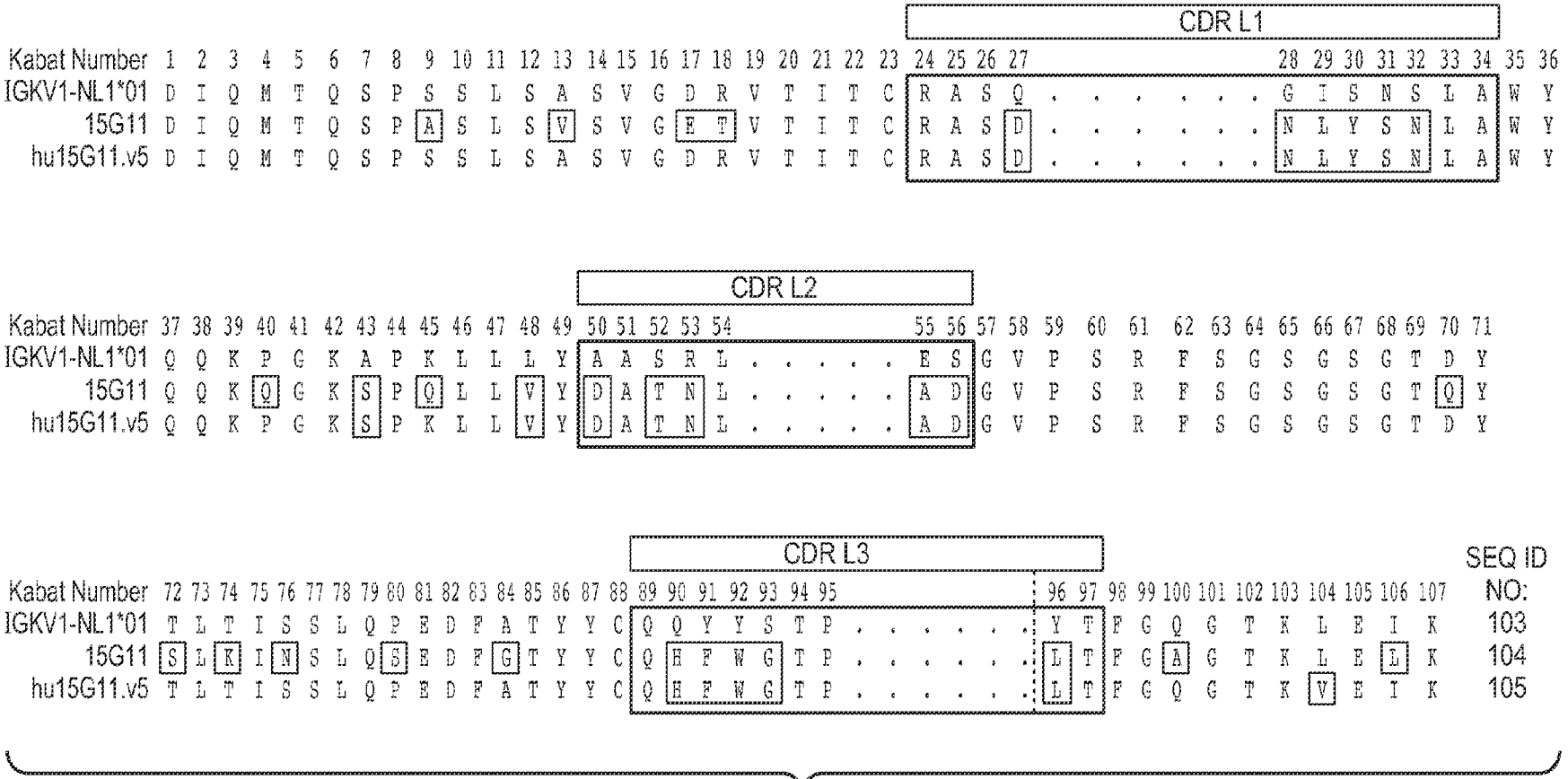


FIG. 4A-1

Humanization of 15G11 to Generate Hu15G11.v5

Heavy Chain: Mouse Antibody Aligned to Human Germlines

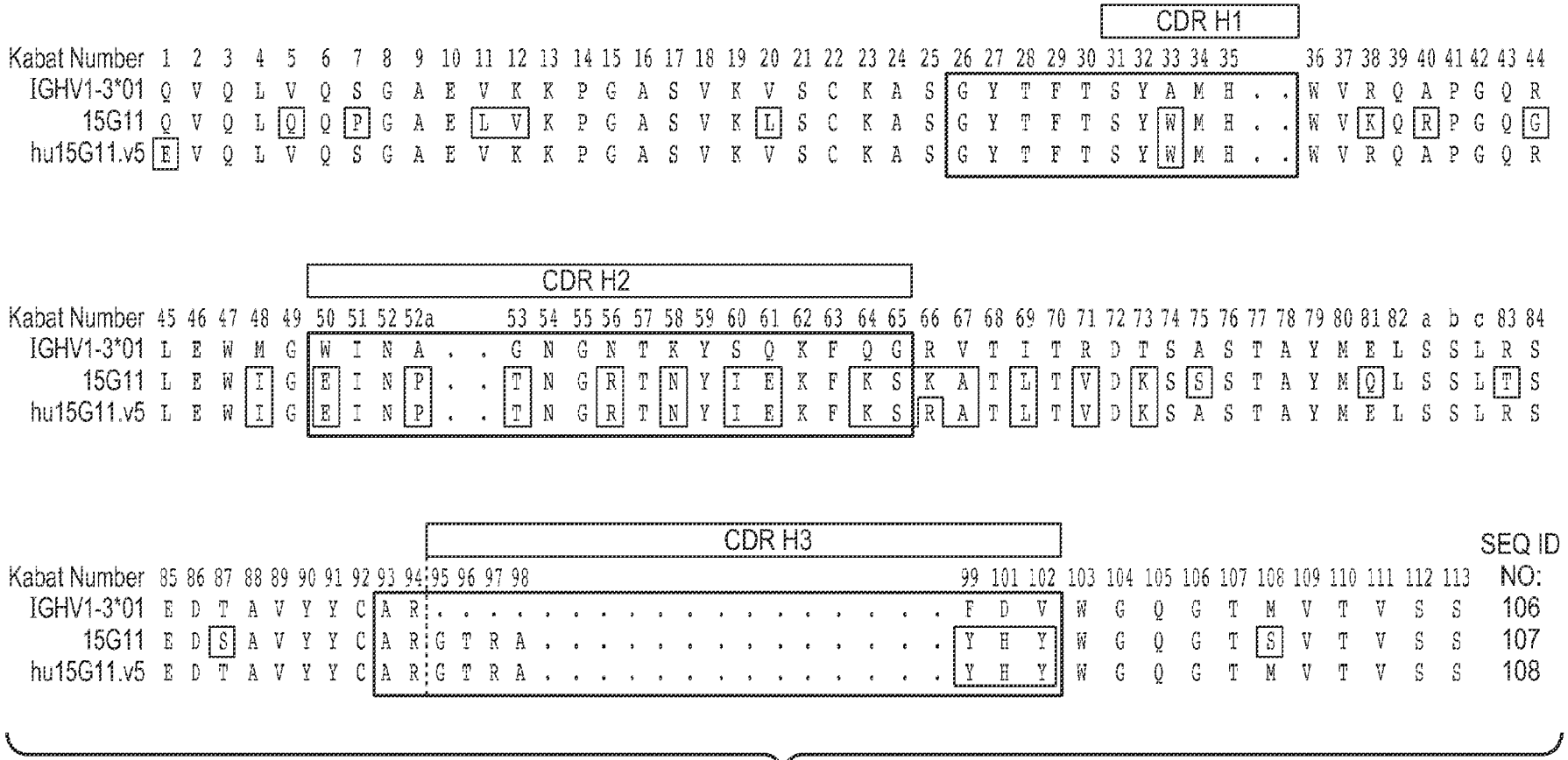


FIG. 4A-2

Humanization of 7A4/8A2 to Generate hu7A4.v15

Light Chain, Kappa: Mouse Antibody Aligned to Human Germlines

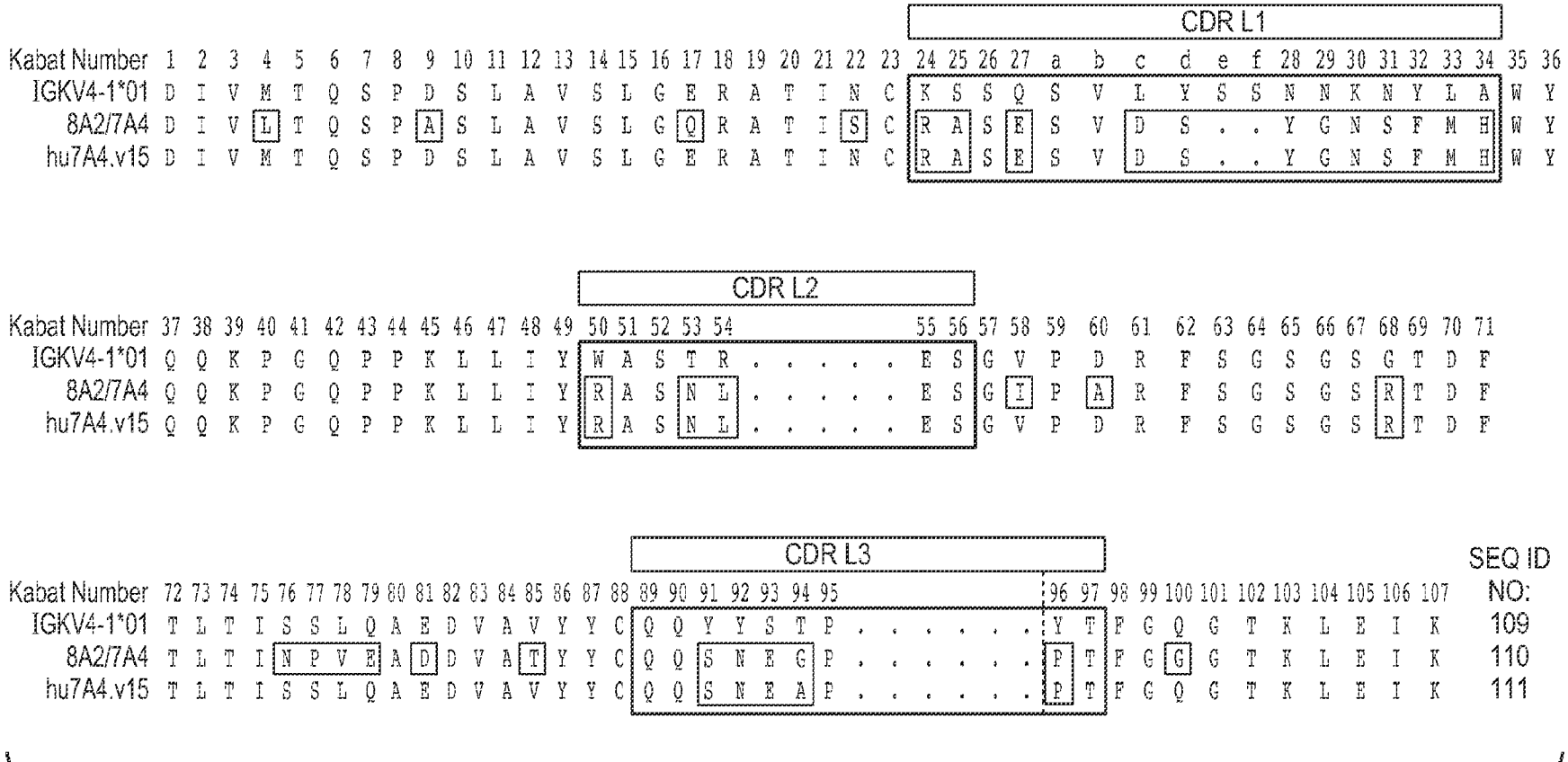


FIG. 4B-1

Humanization of 7A4/8A2 to Generate hu7A4.v15

Heavy Chain: Mouse Antibody Aligned to Human Germlines

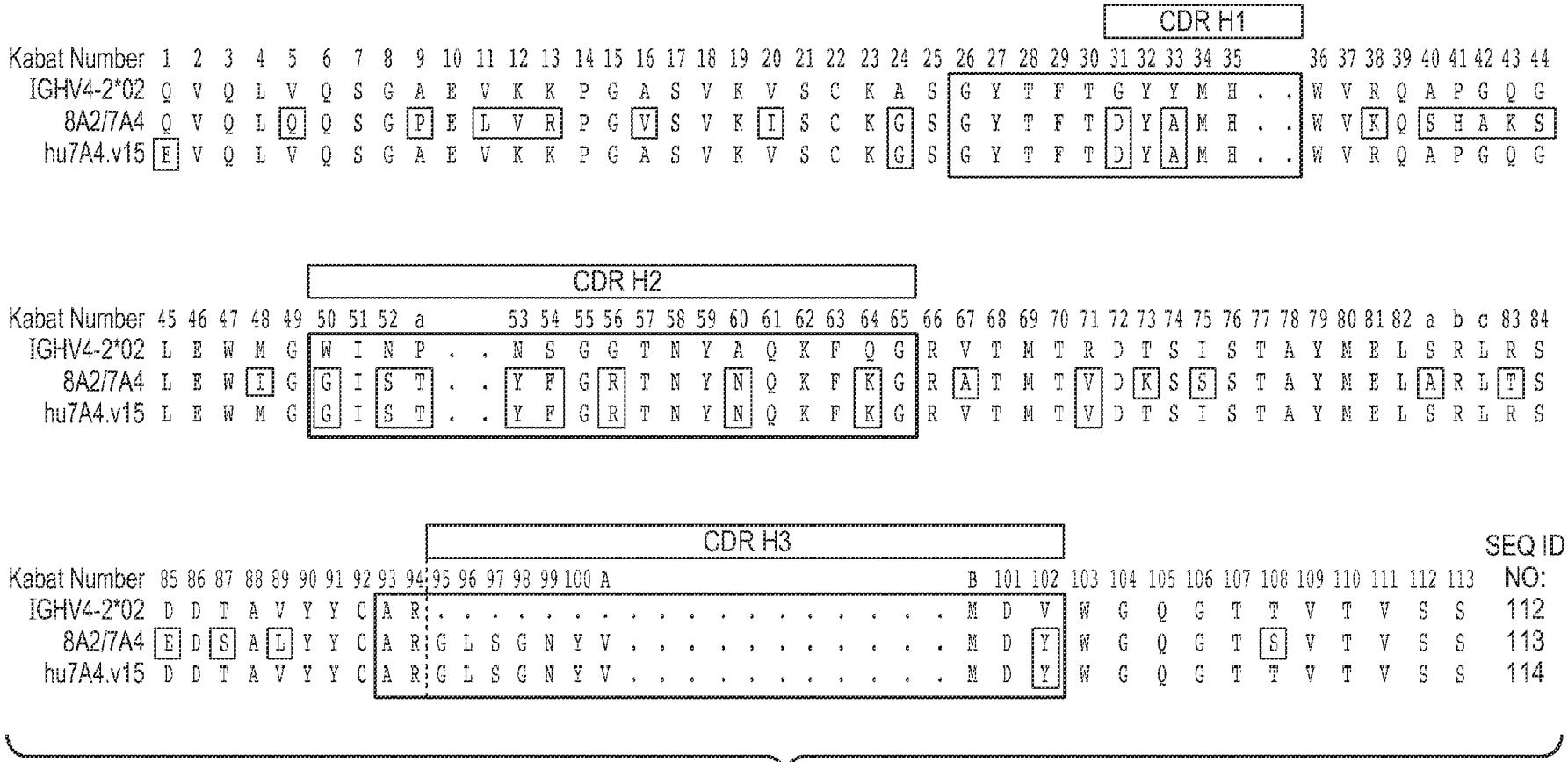


FIG. 4B-2

Humanization of 7G7 to Generate hu7G7.v1

Light Chain, Kappa: Mouse Antibody Aligned to K4H1

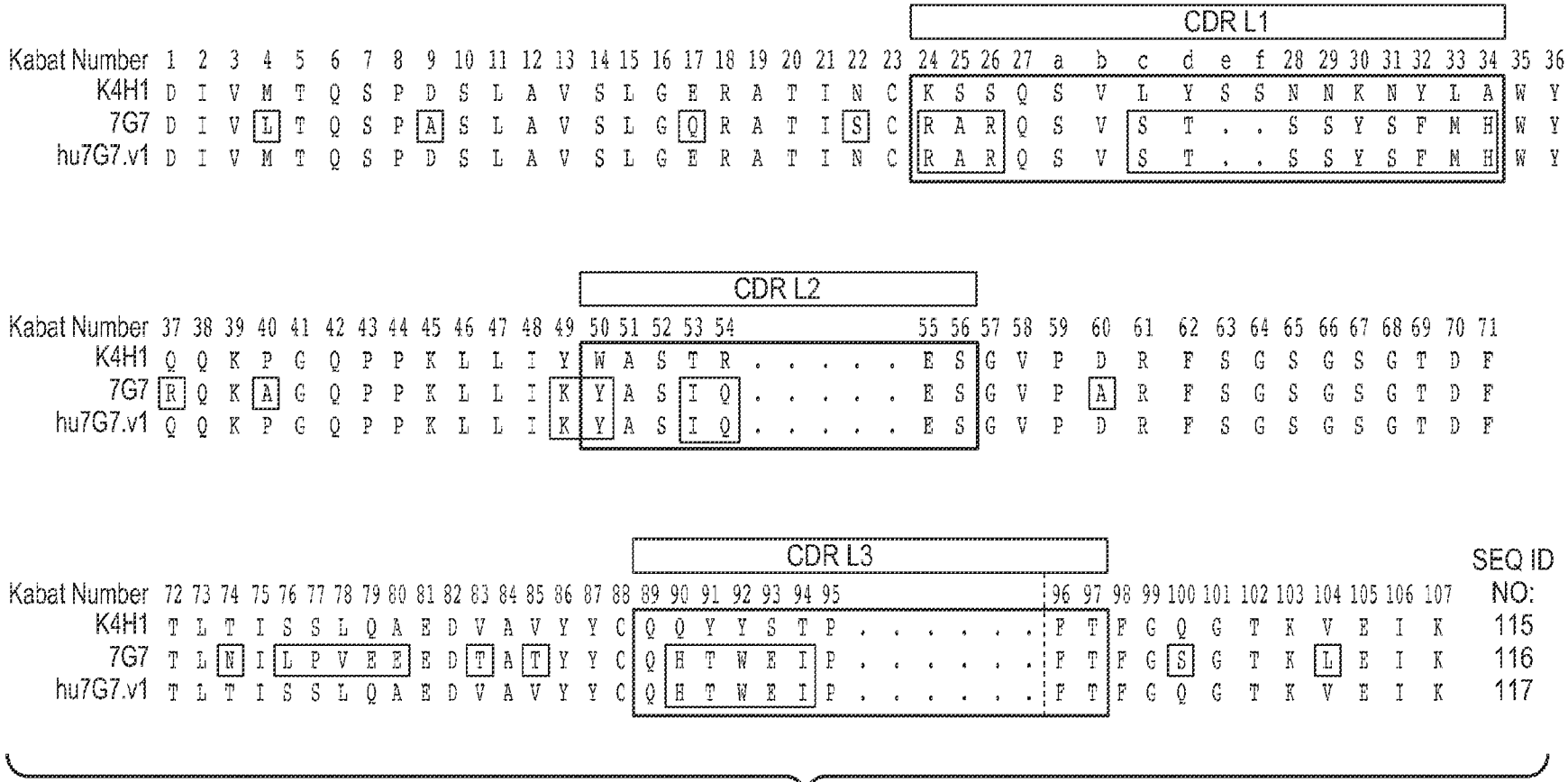


FIG. 4C-1

Humanization of 7G7 to Generate hu7G7.v1

Heavy Chain: Mouse Antibody Aligned to K4H1

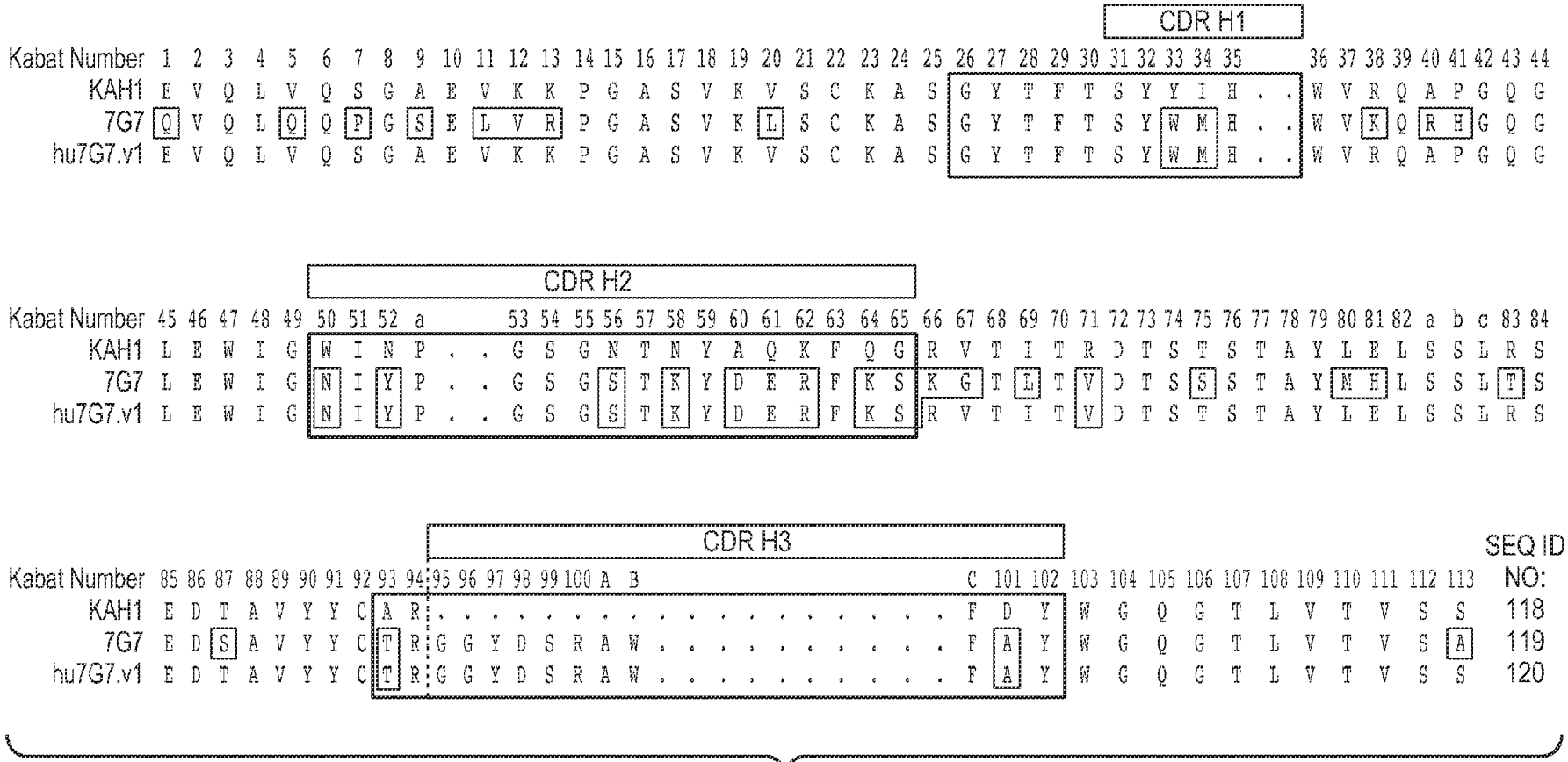
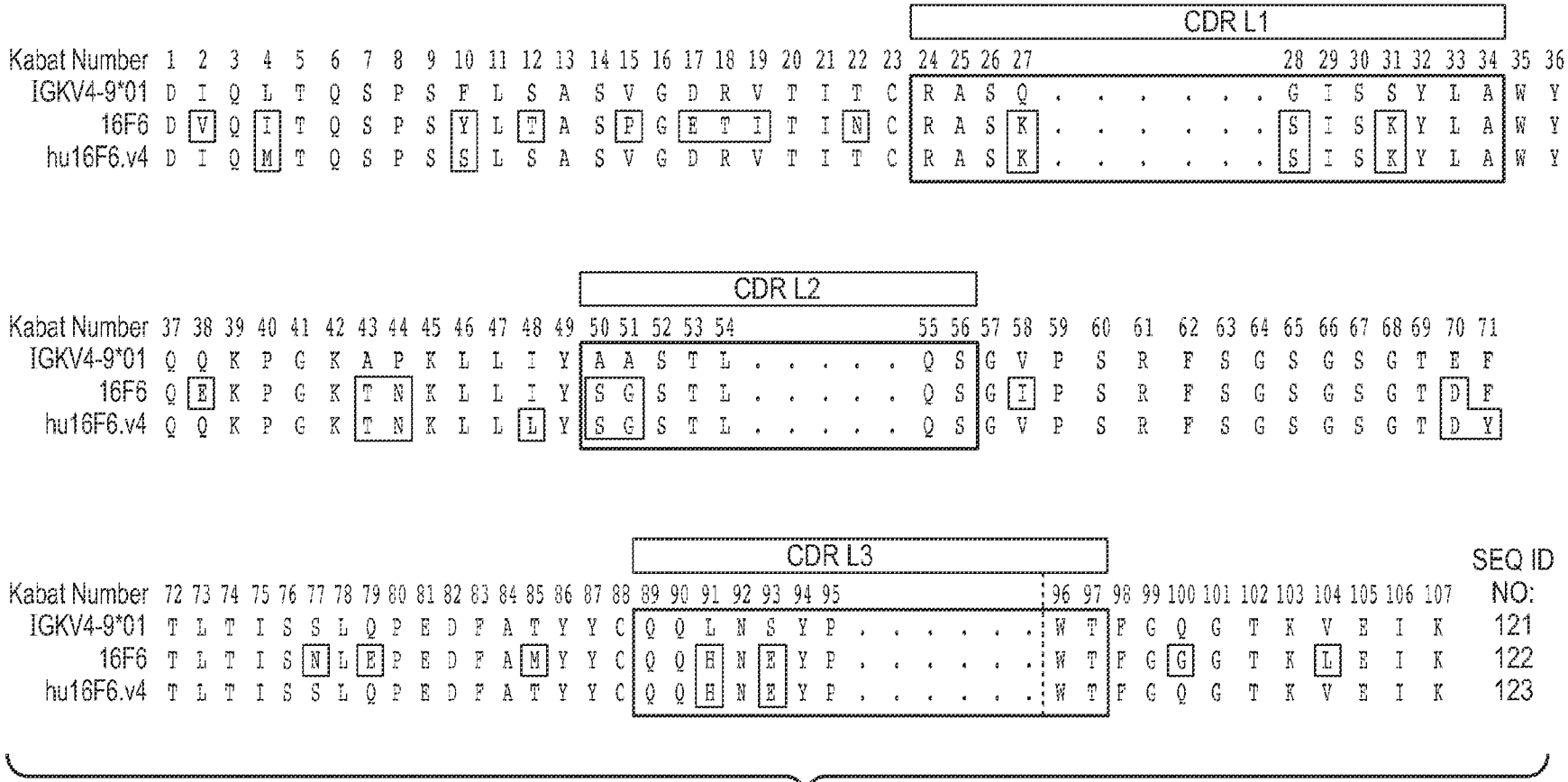


FIG. 4C-2

Humanization of 16F6 to Generate hu16F6.v4

Light Chain, Kappa: Mouse Antibody Aligned to Human Germlines



SEQ ID NO:
121
122
123

FIG. 4D-1

Humanization of 16F6 to Generate hu16F6.v4

Heavy Chain: Mouse Antibody Aligned to Human Germlines

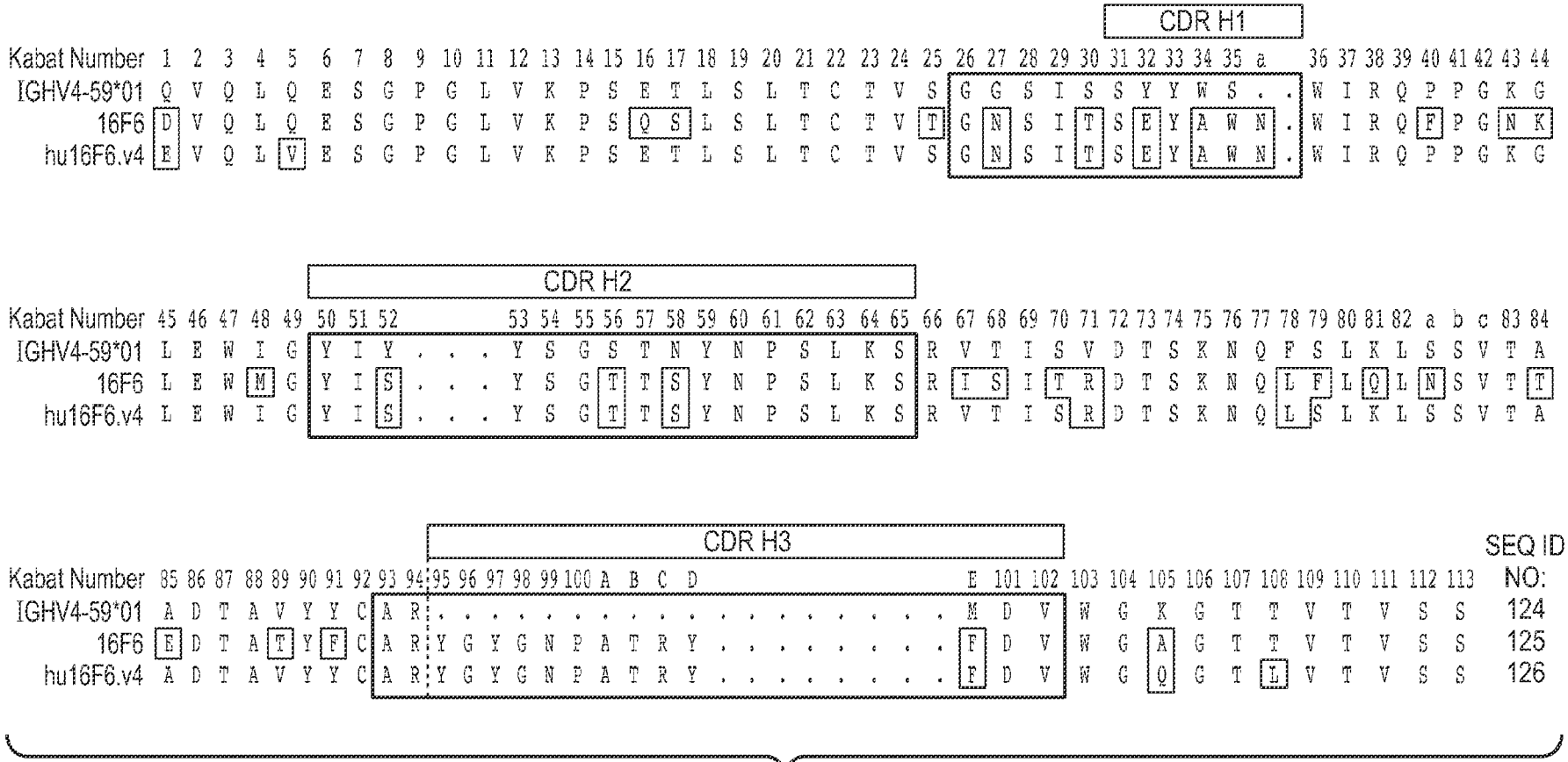


FIG. 4D-2

FIG. 4E-1
FIG. 4E-2

FIG. 4E

FIG. 4E-1

15G11, 7A4 and 16F6 Humanization Variants

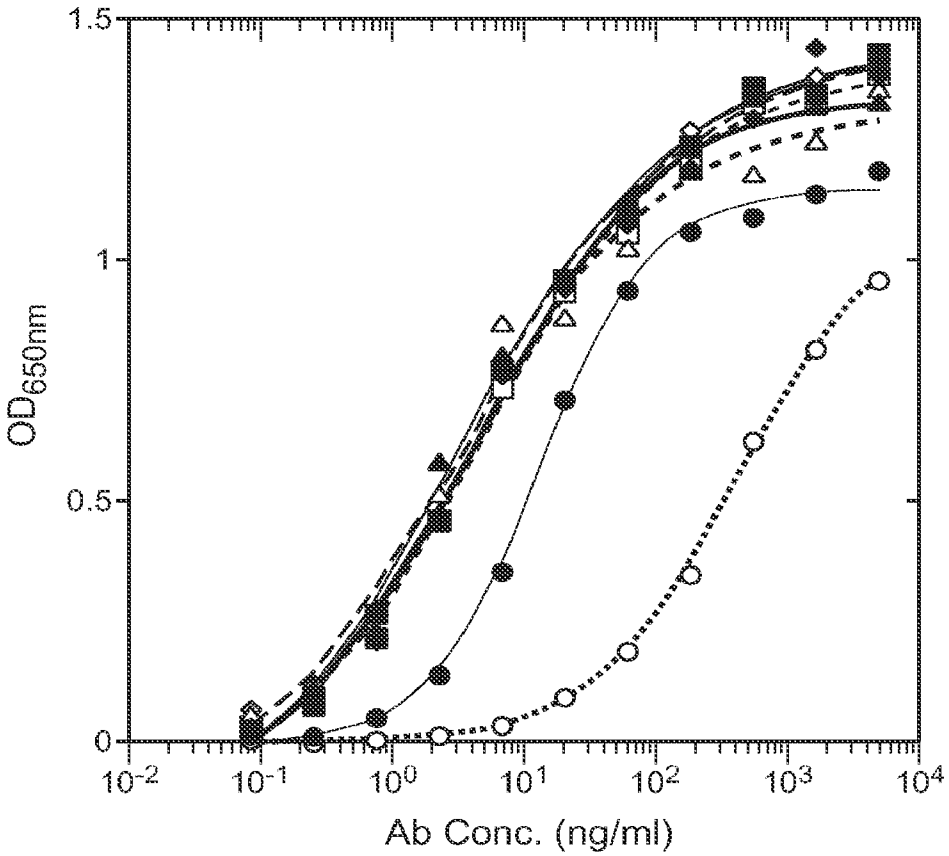
	LC		HC					huTfR			CynoTfR			Cy/hu Ratio
	43	48	48	67	69	71	73	Ka	Kd	KD	Ka	Kd	KD	
mu15G11	S	V	I	A	L	V	K	8.900E+05	8.825E-04	9.916E-10	1.288E+06	3.349E-03	2.600E-09	2.6
hu15G11.v1	A	L	M	V	I	R	T	6.240E+05	3.194E-03	5.119E-09	8.571E+05	8.670E-03	1.012E-08	2.0
hu15G11.v2	A	L	M	V	I	V	T	3.520E+05	3.290E-03	9.347E-09	4.554E+05	8.021E-03	1.761E-08	1.9
hu15G11.v3	S	V	M	V	I	R	T	5.703E+05	2.347E-03	4.115E-09	8.044E+05	4.292E-03	5.336E-09	1.3
hu15G11.v4	S	V	M	V	I	V	T	4.773E+05	1.855E-03	3.886E-09	5.732E+05	4.033E-03	7.036E-09	1.8
hu15G11.v5	S	V	I	A	L	V	K	6.46E+05	0.00215	3.33E-09	5.43E+05	0.00641	1.18E-08	3.5

	LC		HC				huTfR			CynoTfR			Cy/hu Ratio
	27d	58	68	94	24	71	Ka	Kd	KD	Ka	Kd	KD	
ch 7A4	D	I	R	A	G	V	2.11E+06	4.34E-04	2.06E-10	1.06E+06	6.63E-04	6.27E-10	3.04
ch7A4/8A2	S	I	R	G	G	V	3.007E+06	3.353E-04	1.115E-10	1.315E+06	1.216E-03	9.247E-10	8.3
hu7A4.v1	S	V	G	G	A	R	1.41E+06	3.94E-04	2.79E-10	9.15E+05	1.53E-03	1.67E-09	6.0
hu7A4.v2	S	V	G	G	G	R	1.60E+06	3.71E-04	2.32E-10	9.62E+05	1.17E-03	1.22E-09	5.3
hu7A4.v3	S	V	G	G	A	V	6.24E+05	3.39E-04	5.43E-10	3.22E+05	9.34E-04	2.90E-09	5.3
hu7A4.v4	S	V	G	G	G	V	4.82E+05	2.95E-04	6.12E-10	2.52E+05	9.66E-04	3.83E-09	6.3
hu7A4.v5	S	I	G	G	A	R	1.748E+06	6.363 E-04	3.640E-10	1.461E+06	1.757E-03	1.203E-09	3.3
hu7A4.v6	S	I	G	G	G	R	2.845E+06	7.396 E-04	2.600E-10	1.780E+06	1.883E-03	1.058E-09	4.1

hu7A4.v7	S	I	G	G	A	V	1.113E+06	5.735E-04	5.153E-10	2.428E+06	2.855E-03	1.176E-09	2.3
hu7A4.v8	S	I	G	G	G	V	8.326E+05	1.077E-03	1.294E-09	2.768E+05	3.411E-03	1.232E-08	9.5
hu7A4.v9	S	V	R	G	A	R	1.930E+06	2.304E-04	1.194E-10	1.280E+06	5.477E-04	4.279E-10	3.6
hu7A4.v10	S	V	R	G	G	R	1.684E+06	2.407E-04	1.429E-10	1.115E+06	5.632E-04	5.051E-10	3.5
hu7A4.v11	S	V	R	G	A	V	1.487E+06	2.323E-04	1.562E-10	8.049E+05	7.588E-04	9.427E-10	6.0
hu7A4.v12	S	V	R	G	G	V	9.159E+05	1.833E-04	2.001E-10	4.587E+05	9.580E-04	2.089E-09	10.4
hu7A4.v13	S	V	G	A	G	V	4.51E+05	6.14E-04	1.36E-09	2.13E+05	2.42E-03	1.14E-08	8.3
hu7A4.v14	S	I	G	A	G	V	6.14E+05	7.33E-04	1.19E-09	2.30E+05	3.61E-03	1.57E-08	13.2
hu7A4.v15	S	V	R	A	G	V	6.73E+05	3.77E-04	5.61E-10	2.90E+05	2.26E-03	7.80E-09	13.9

	LC		HC		huTfR			CynoTfR			Cy/hu Ratio
	43	44	71	78	Ka	Kd	KD	Ka	Kd	KD	
mu16F6	T	N	R	L	1.36E+05	2.81E-04	2.07E-09	1.23E+05	9.13E-04	7.45E-09	3.6
hu16F6.v1	A	P	V	F	4.10E+04	7.67E-04	1.87E-08	4.64E+04	0.009242	1.99E-07	10.7
hu16F6.v2	A	P	R	L	4.62E+04	1.97E-04	4.25E-09	4.38E+04	0.002981	6.81E-08	16.0
hu16F6.v3	T	N	V	F	7.86E+04	3.23E-04	4.11E-09	7.26E+04	0.002503	3.45E-08	8.4
hu16F6.v4	T	N	R	L	8.99E+04	7.94E-05	8.84E-10	8.30E+04	9.13E-04	1.10E-08	12.5

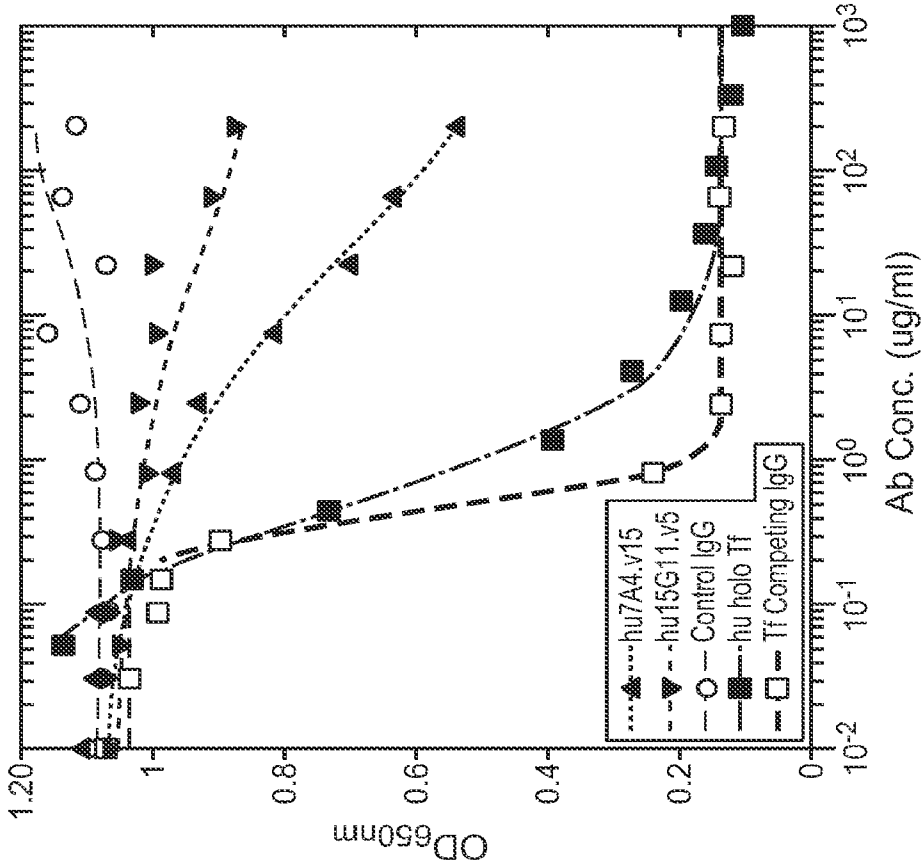
FIG. 4E-2

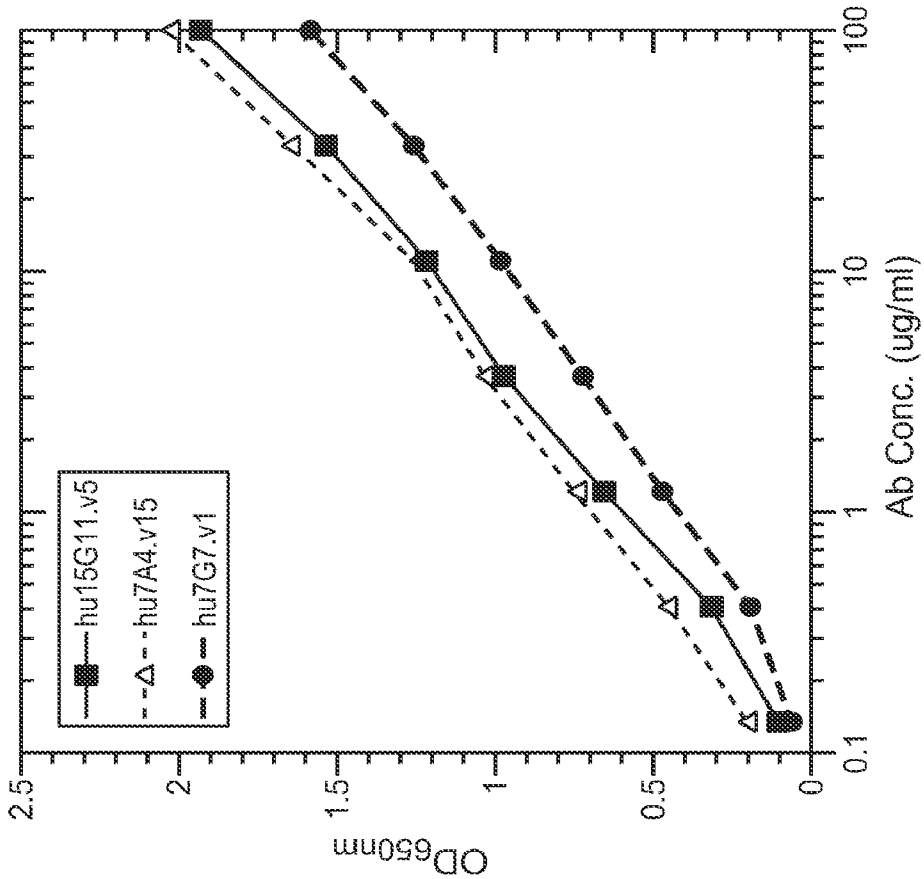


Antibody binding in the (open, dashed line) presence or (filled, solid line) absence of 6.3 μM holo-Tf

hu7A4.v15 - Square
hu15G11.v5 - Diamond
hu7G7.v1 - Triangle
Tf Competing Antibody - Circle

FIG. 5


OD650nm
Ab Conc. (ug/ml)
hu7A4.v15
hu15G11.v5
Control IgG
hu holo Tf
Tf Competing IgG


OD650nm
Ab Conc. (ug/ml)
hu15G11.v5
hu7A4.v15
hu7G7.v1

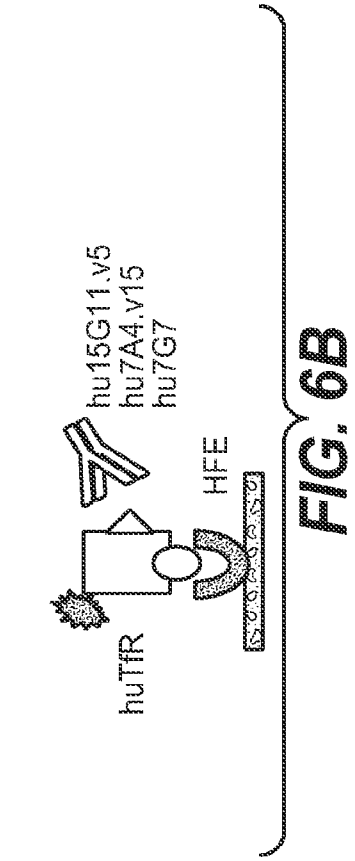

hu15G11.v5
hu7A4.v15
hu7G7
huTfR
HFE

FIG. 6B

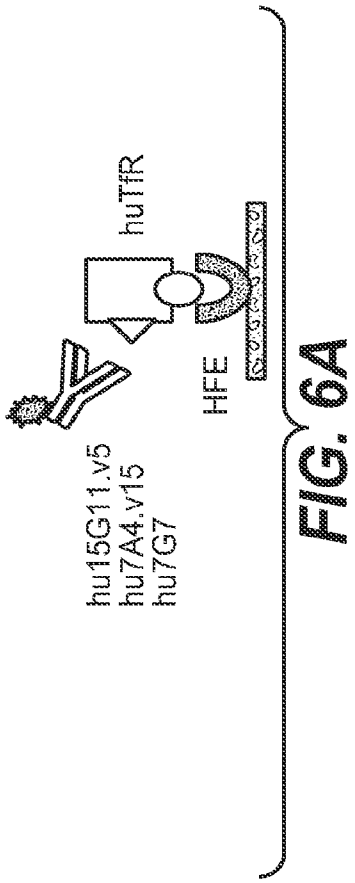

hu15G11.v5
hu7A4.v15
hu7G7
huTfR
HFE

FIG. 6A

	15G11 Variant IgG	ELIZA (EC50) Using IgG huTfR (ng/ml)	ELIZA (EC50) Using IgG CynoTfR (ng/ml)	Biacore (SCK) 1:1 fit (IgG) huTfR (nM)	Biacore (SCK) 1:1 fit (IgG) CynoTfR (nM)	Biacore Steady State (IgG) huTfR (nM)	Biacore Steady State (IgG) CynoTfR (nM)	Biacore (Fab) huTfR (nM)	Biacore (Fab) CynoTfR (nM)
	15G11.v5	16± 1	20± 2	3.3	12			4.7	16
CDR-H3	T96A	274	3378	173		433			
	V99A	16.1	21.8						
	H101A	14.2	21.6						
	V102A	15.7	22.3						
CDR-L3	Q89A	30	506	125	268	212	591		
	H90A	13	24						
	F91A	45.8	953.3	167 ± 69		228 ± 152		383	
	W92A	11.8	44.1	31	32	123	327	280	370
	G93A	14.5	50.8	40	61	150	412	245	1300
	T94A	16.8	29.3						
	P95A	10.6	40.6	29	57	94	258	170	886
	L96A	9.9	18						
	T97A	13.4	15.7						

CDR L3									SEQ ID
89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	NO:
Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	T	128

CDR H3								SEQ ID
95	96	97	98	99	101	102		NO:
G	T	R	A	Y	H	Y		129

FIG. 7A

	7A4 Variant IgG	ELIZA (EC50) Using IgG huTfR (ng/ml)	ELIZA (EC50) Using IgG CynoTfR (ng/ml)	Biacore (SCK) 1:1 fit (IgG) huTfR (nM)	Biacore (SCK) 1:1 fit (IgG) CynoTfR (nM)	Biacore Steady State (IgG) huTfR (nM)	Biacore Steady State (IgG) CynoTfR (nM)	Biacore (Fab) huTfR (nM)	Biacore (Fab) CynoTfR (nM)
	7A4.v15	14.8	14.2	0.58	7.8			0.4	4.3
CDR-H3	G95A	13.5	41.8						
	L96A	15.5	28.7						
	S97A								
	G98A	19.4	24.7						
	N99A	17	82.2	11	22	19	77		
	Y100A	15.9	24						
	V100aA								
	M100bA	16.1	16.9						
	D101A	17.3	18.5						
	Y102A	12.6	17.8						
CDR-L3	Q89A	10.9	13.8						
	Q90A	9.3	181	16	570	41	329	130	760
	S91A	11.3	16.3						
	N92A	8.7	13.7						
	E93A	12.2	17.6						
	P95A	9.7	15.9						
	P96A	10	16.2						
	T97A	12	22.6						

CDR L3										SEQ ID NO:
89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97		
Q	Q	S	N	E	A	P	P	T		130

CDR H3											SEQ ID NO:
95	96	97	98	99	100	100a	100b	101	102		
G	L	S	G	N	Y	V	M	D	Y		131

FIG. 7B

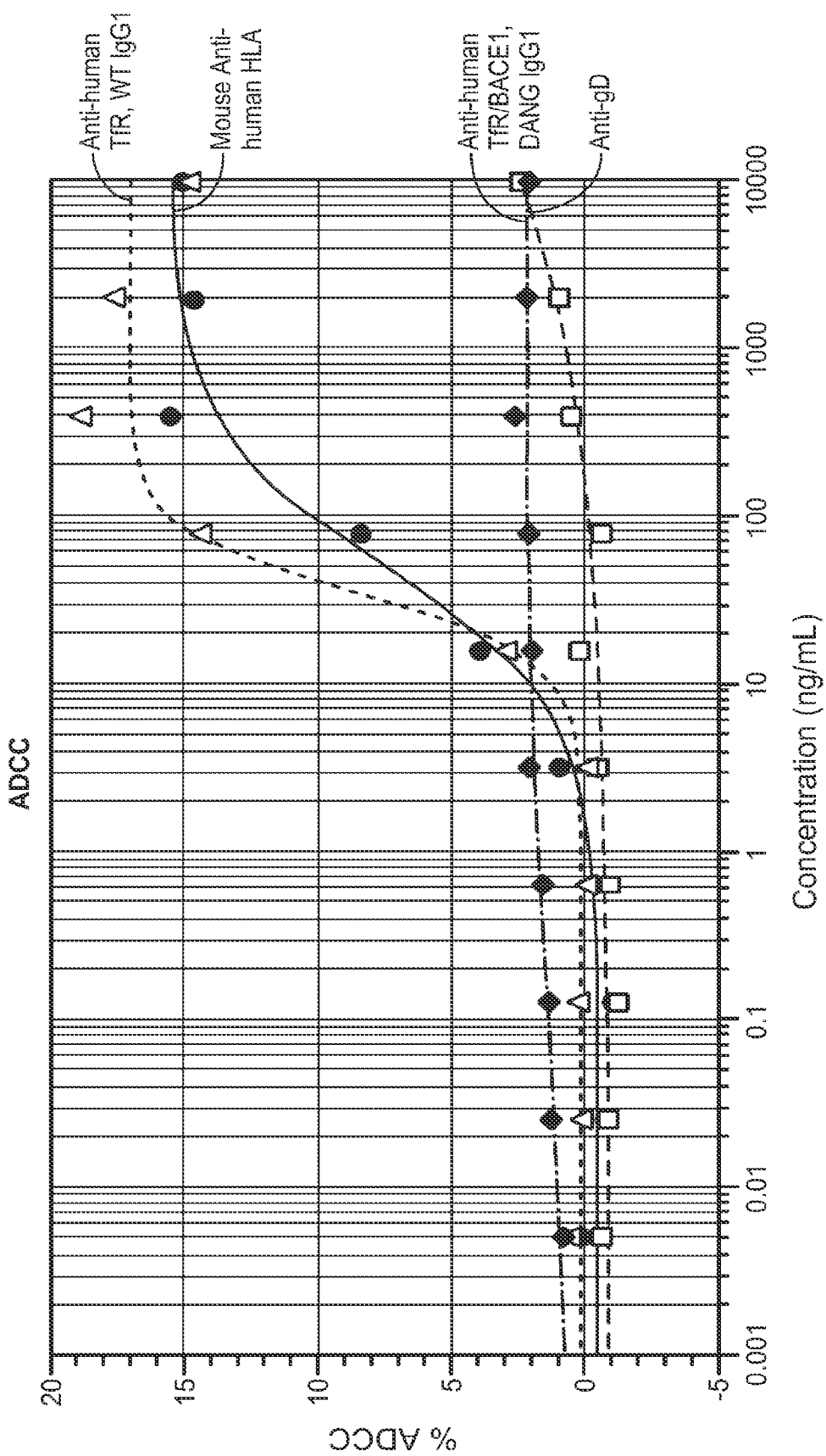

Anti-human TfR, WT IgG1
Mouse Anti-human HLA
Anti-human TfR/BACE1, DANG IgG1
Anti-gD
ADCC
% ADCC
Concentration (ng/mL)
20
15
10
5
0
-5
0.001
0.01
0.1
1
10
100
1000
10000

FIG. 8A

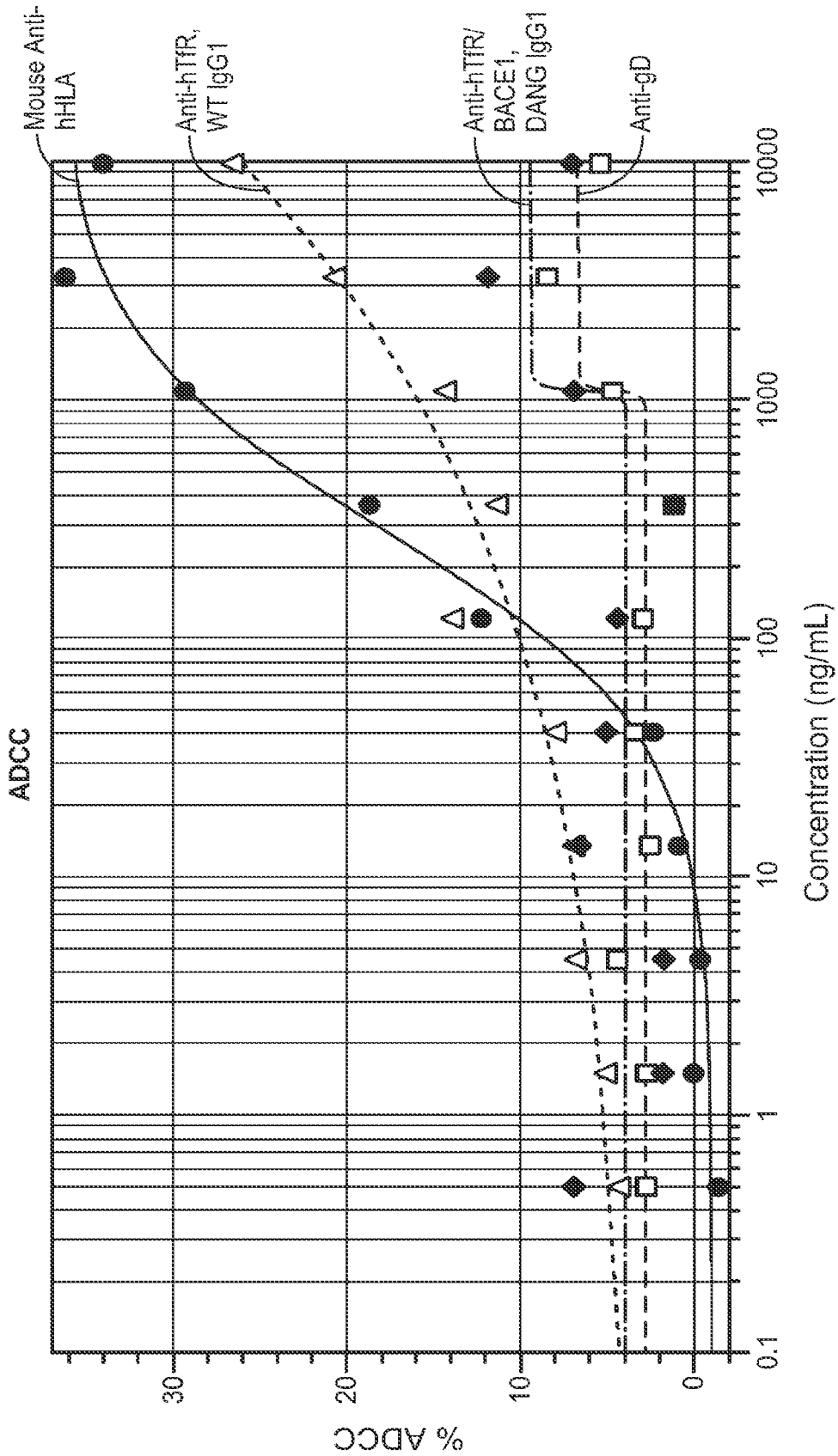

Mouse Anti-hHLA
Anti-hTfR, WT IgG1
Anti-hTfR/ BACE1, DANG IgG1
Anti-gD
ADCC
% ADCC
Concentration (ng/mL)
0.1
1
10
100
1000
10000
0
10
20
30

FIG. 8B

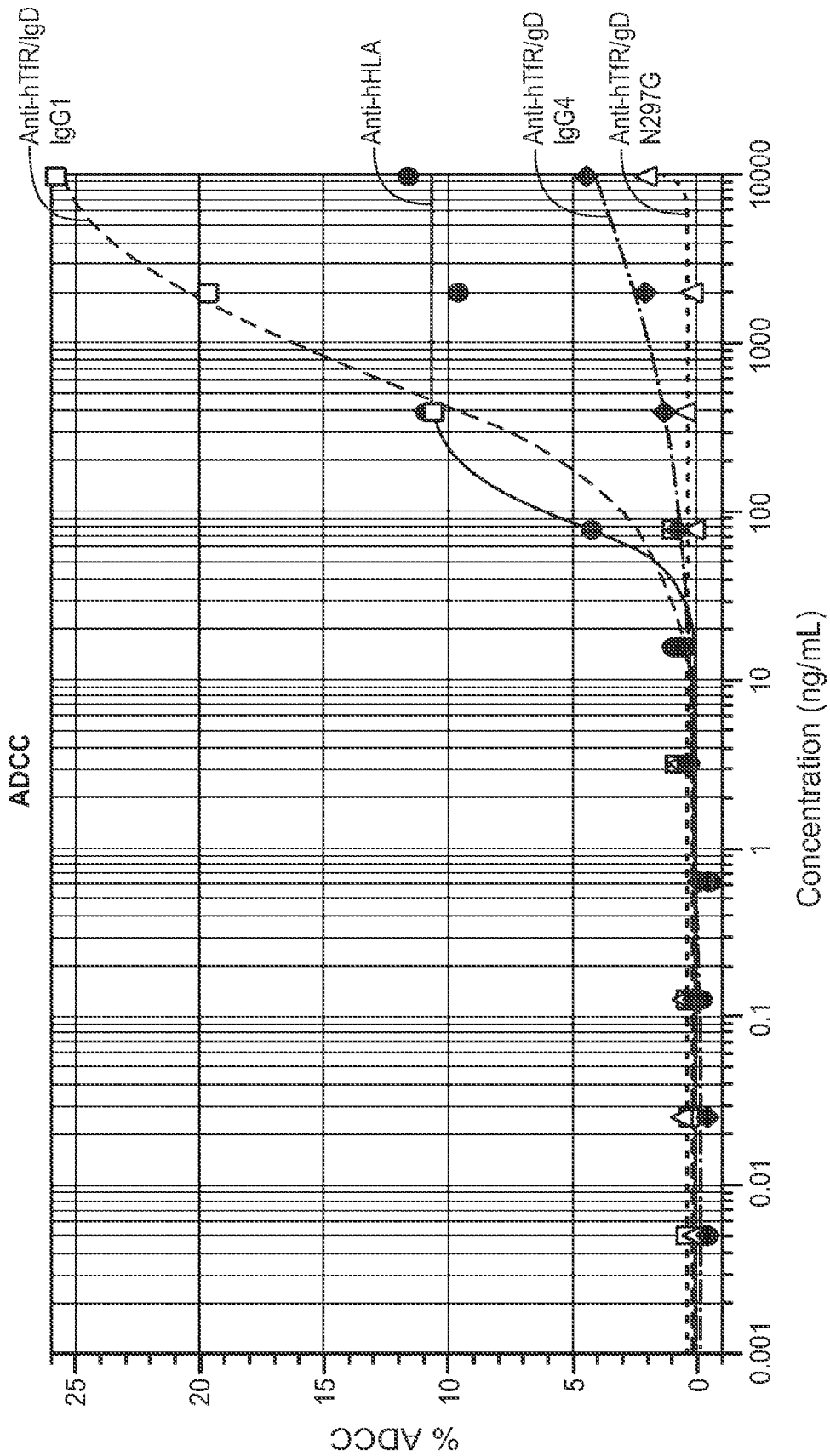

ADCC
% ADCC
25
20
15
10
5
0
0.001
0.01
0.1
1
10
100
1000
10000
Concentration (ng/mL)
Anti-hTfR/IgD IgG1
Anti-hHLA
Anti-hTfR/gD IgG4
Anti-hTfR/gD N297G

FIG. 9A

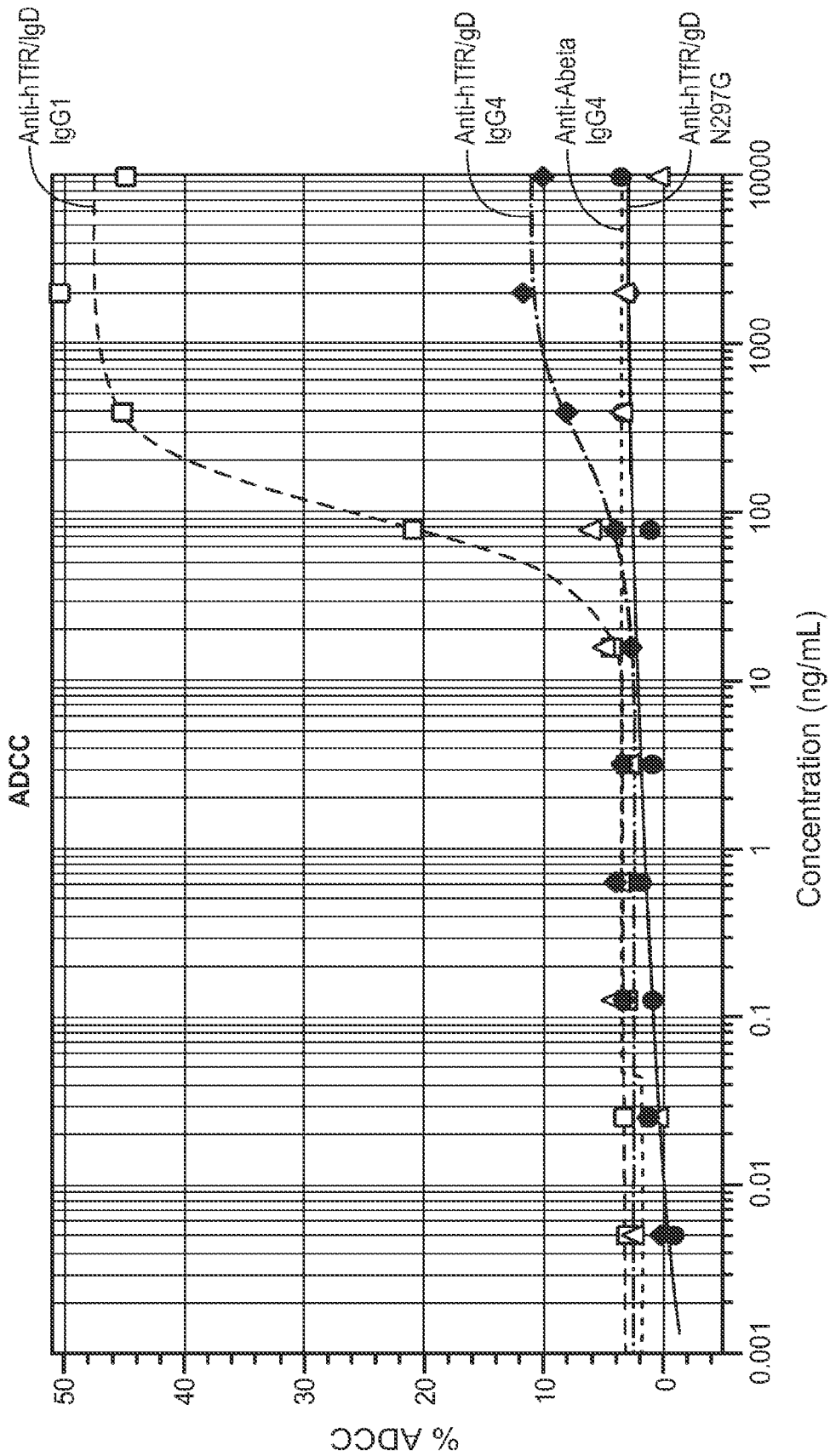

Anti-hTfR/IgD IgG1
Anti-hTfR/gD IgG4
Anti-Abeta IgG4
Anti-hTfR/gD N297G
ADCC
% ADCC
50
40
30
20
10
0
0.001
0.01
0.1
1
10
100
1000
10000
Concentration (ng/mL)

FIG. 9B

Grp	N	Tx	Isotype	Dose (mg/kg)	TfR Variant	Biacore huTfR (nM, Fab)	Biacore CynoTfR (nM, Fab)
1	5	Anti-gD	hIgG1	30			
2	5	Anti-TfR[1]/BACE1	hIgG1 DANG	30	hu15G11.v5	6 ± 2	19 ± 9
3	5	Anti-TfR[2]/BACE1	hIgG1 DANG	30	hu15G11.LC92A	230 ± 140	440 ± 160

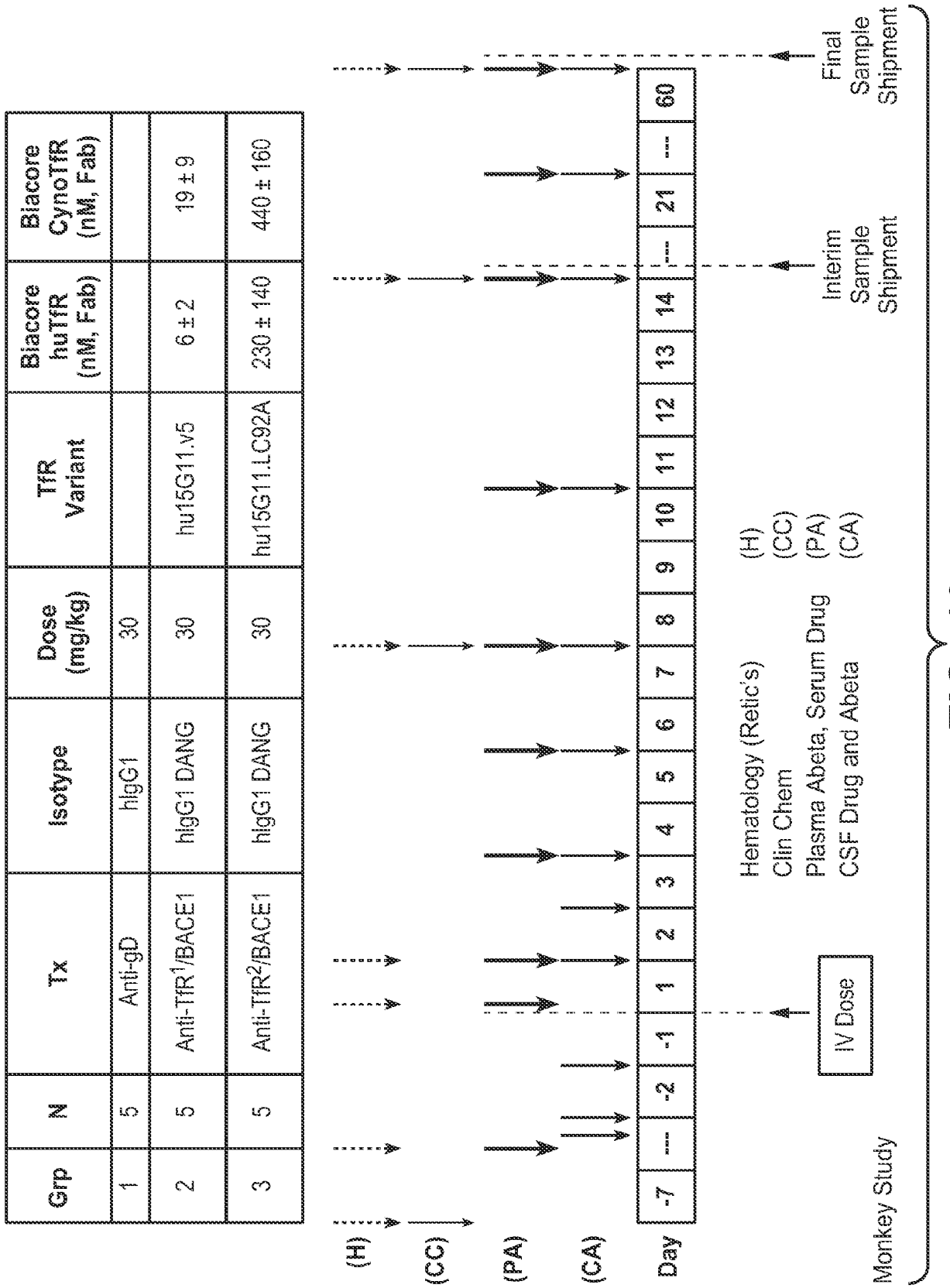


FIG. 10

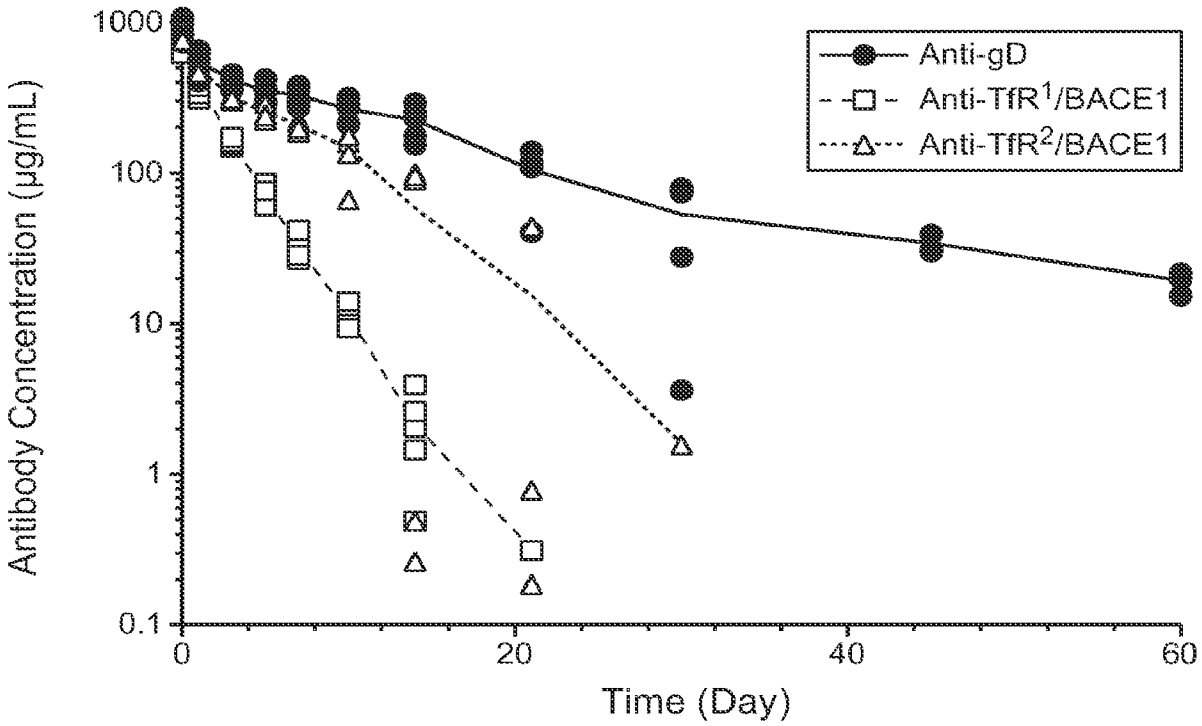


FIG. 11A

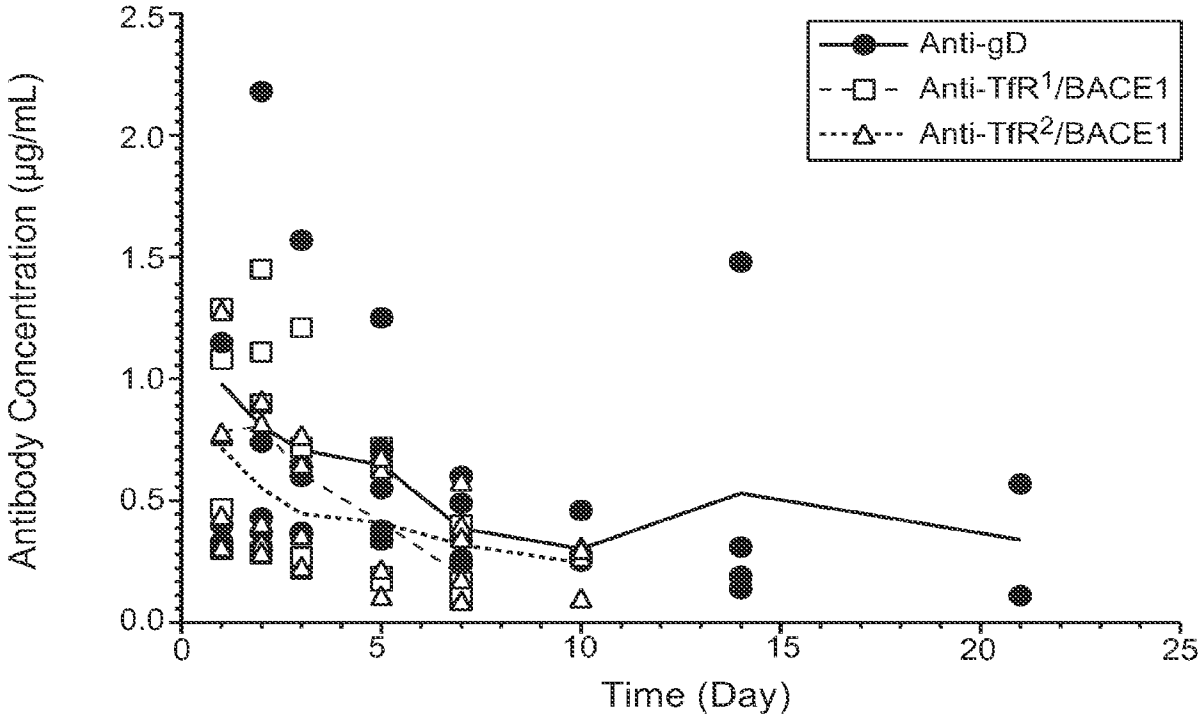


FIG. 11B

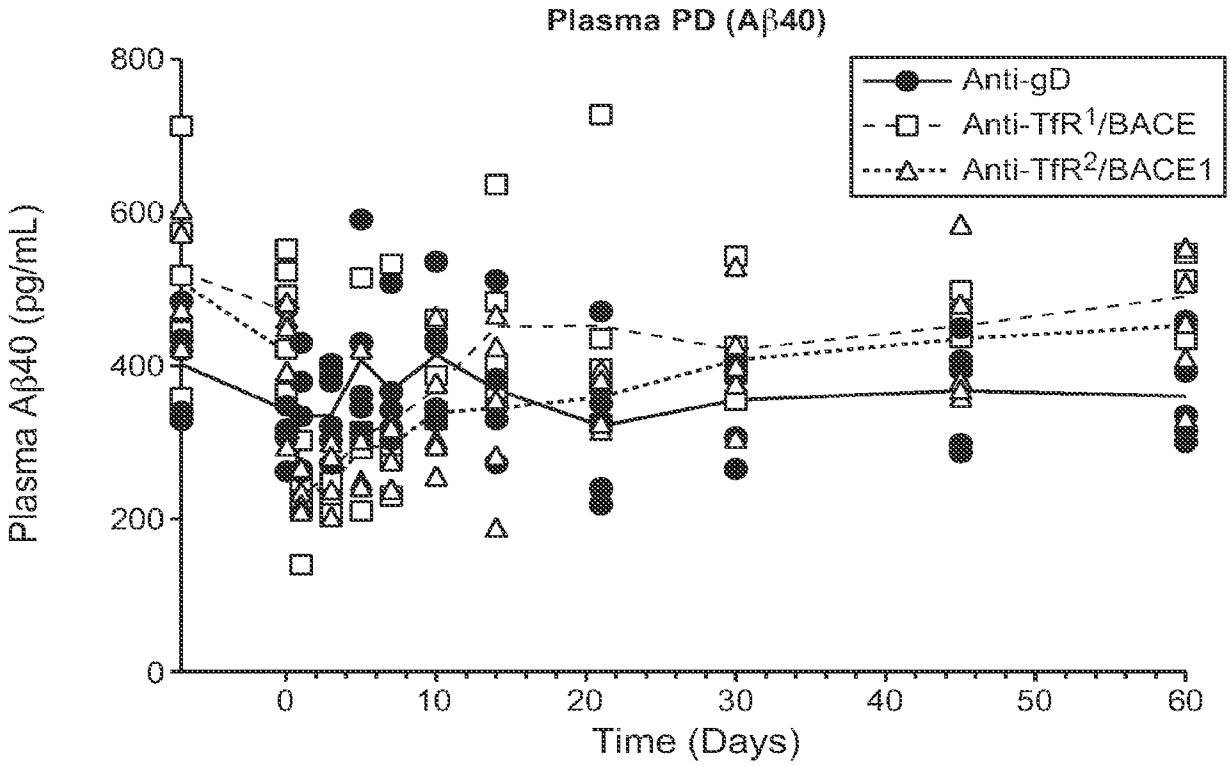


FIG. 12A

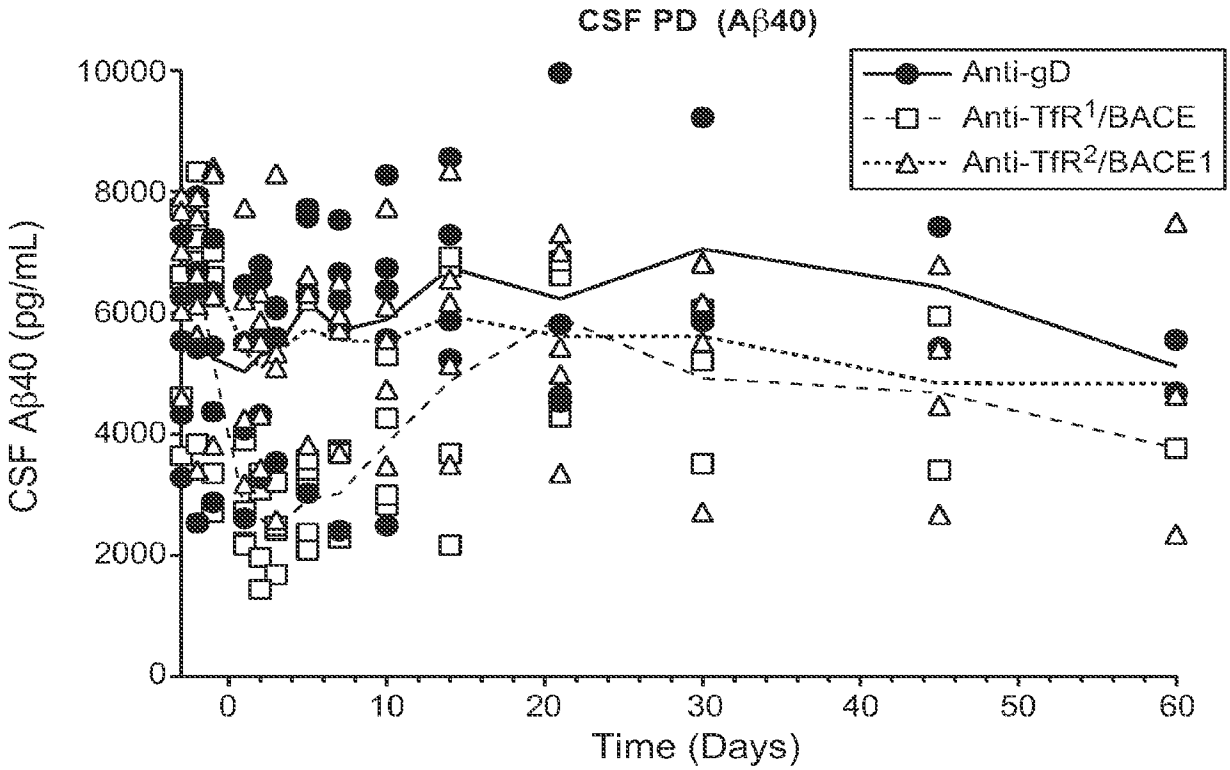


FIG. 12B

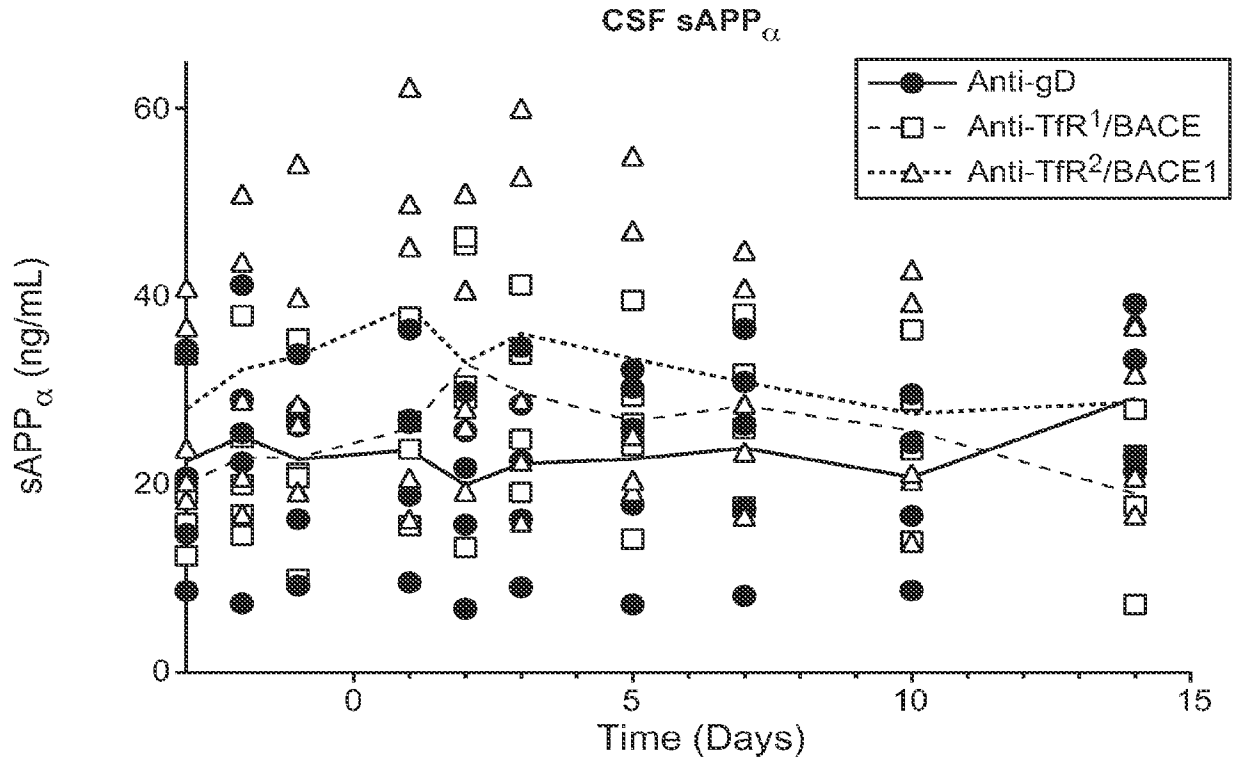


FIG. 12C

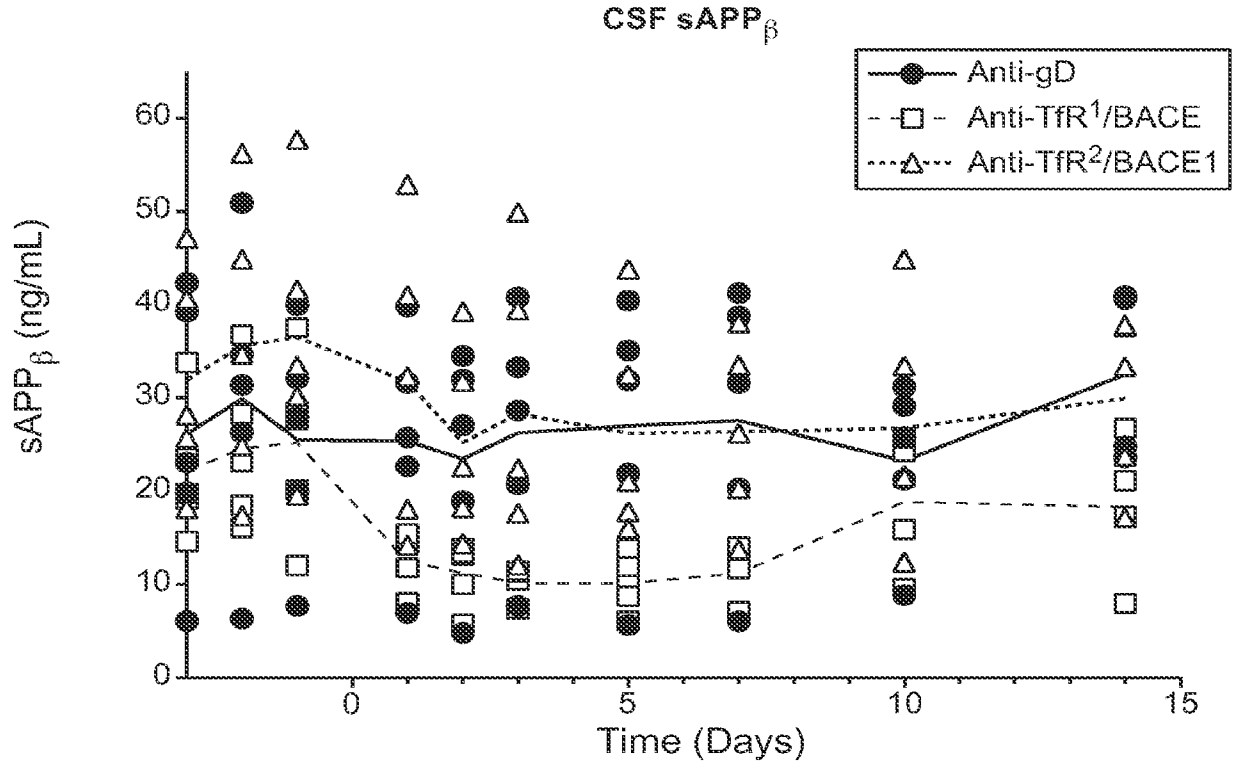


FIG. 12D

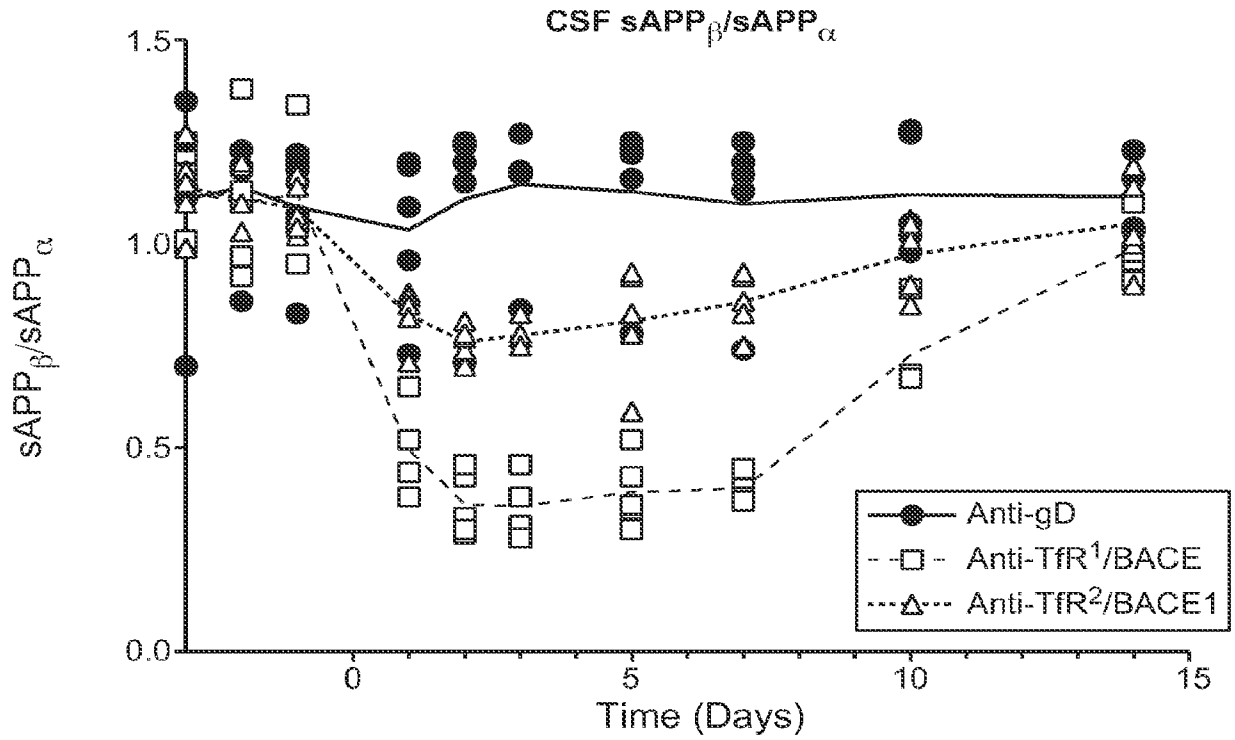

CSF sAPPβ/sAPPα
sAPPβ/sAPPα
1.5
1.0
0.5
0.0
0
5
10
15
Time (Days)
Anti-gD
Anti-TfR1/BACE
Anti-TfR2/BACE1

FIG. 12E

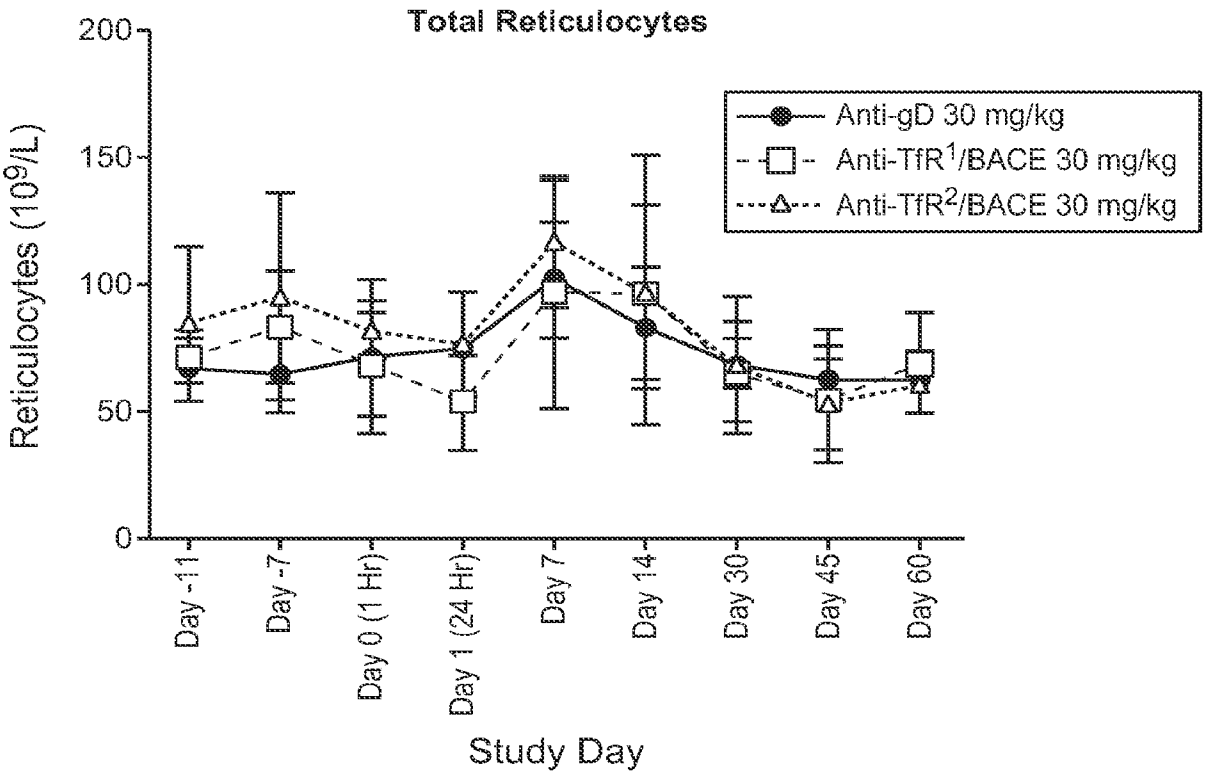


FIG. 13A

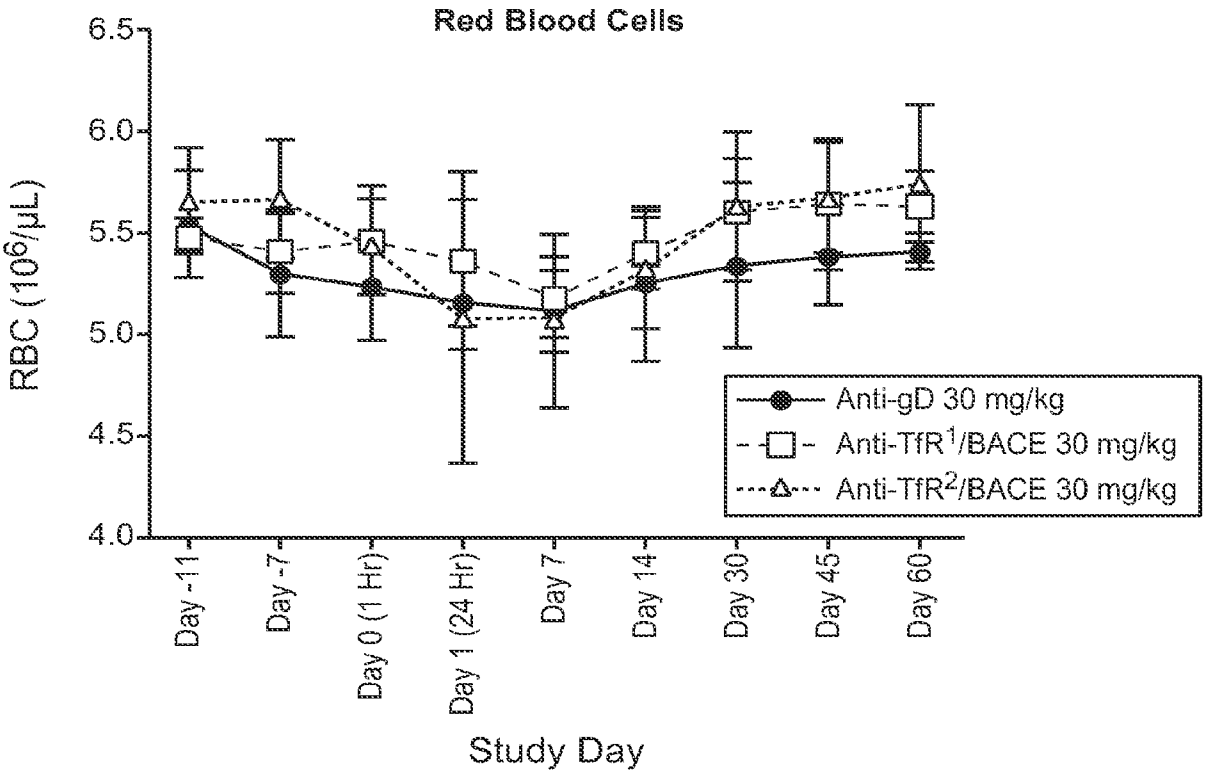


FIG. 13B

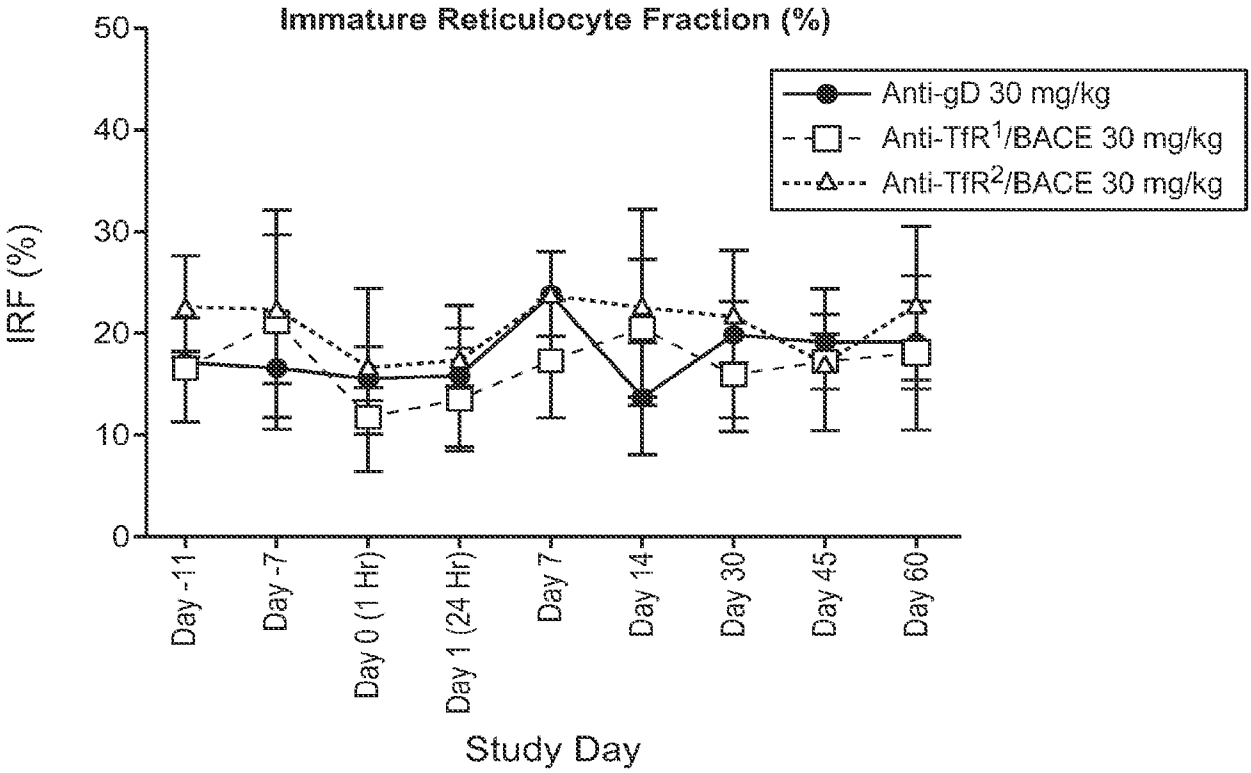


FIG. 13C

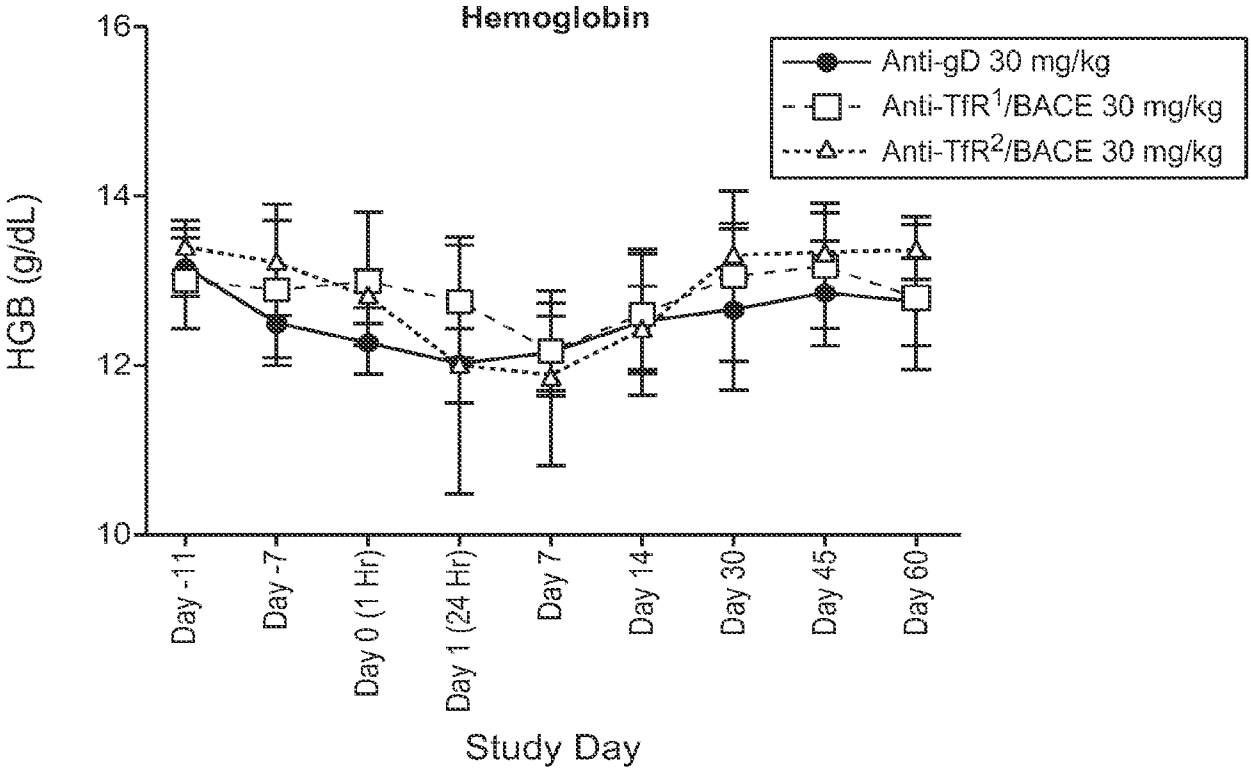


FIG. 13D

Grp	N	Tx	Isotype	Dose (mg/kg)	TfR Variant	Biacore huTfR (nM, Fab)	Biacore CynoTfR (nM, Fab)
1	5	Anti-gD	hIgG1	30			
2	5	Anti-TfR[1]/BACE1	hIgG1 DANG	30	hu15G11.v5	6 ± 2	19 ± 9
3	5	Anti-TfR[2]/BACE1	hIgG1 DANG	30	hu15G11.LC92A	230 ± 140	440 ± 160
4	5	Anti-BACE1	hIgG1	30	N/A	-	-

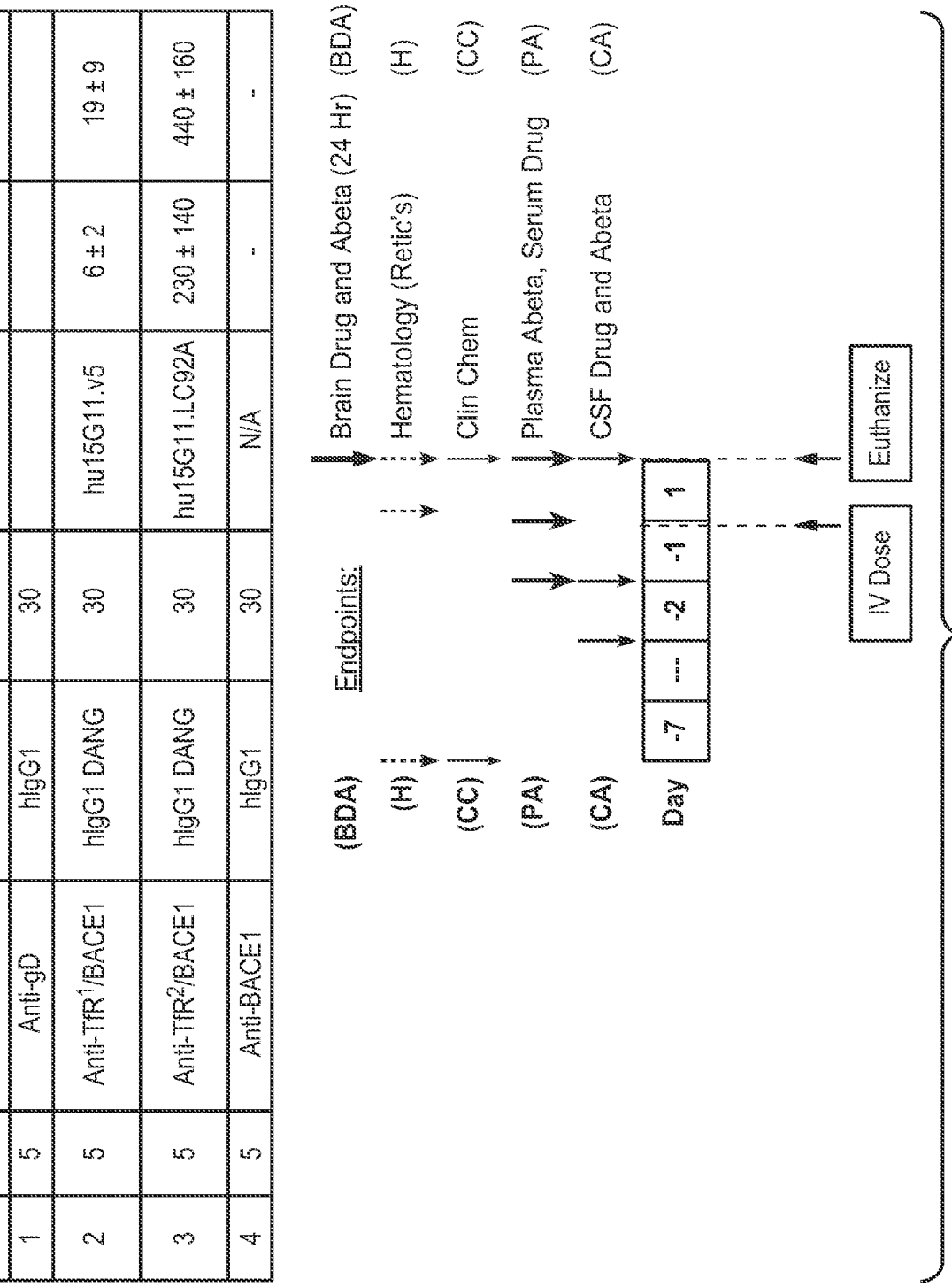


FIG. 14

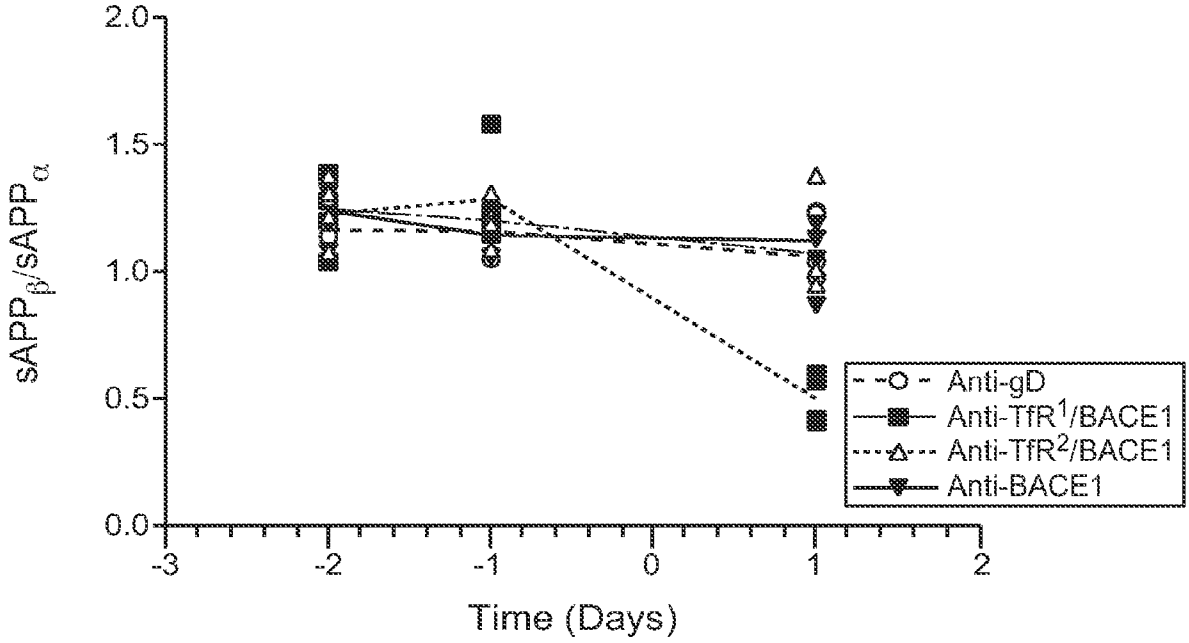


FIG. 15A

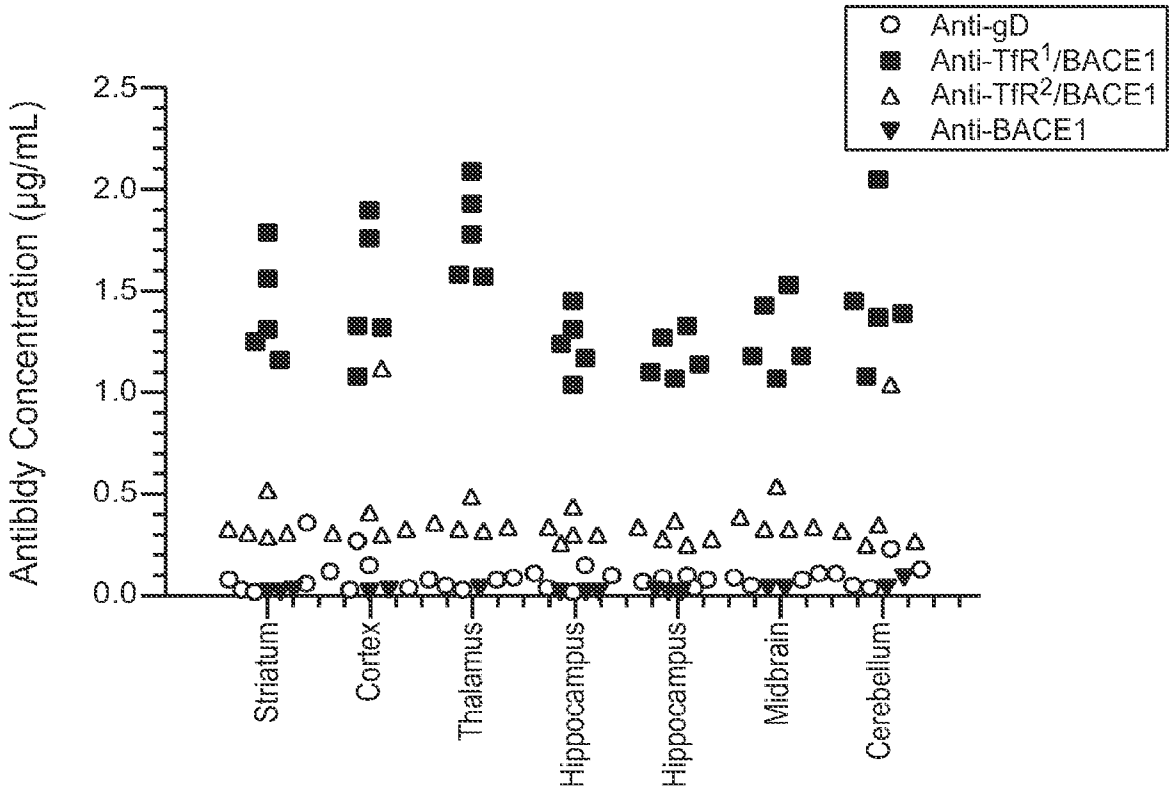


FIG. 15B

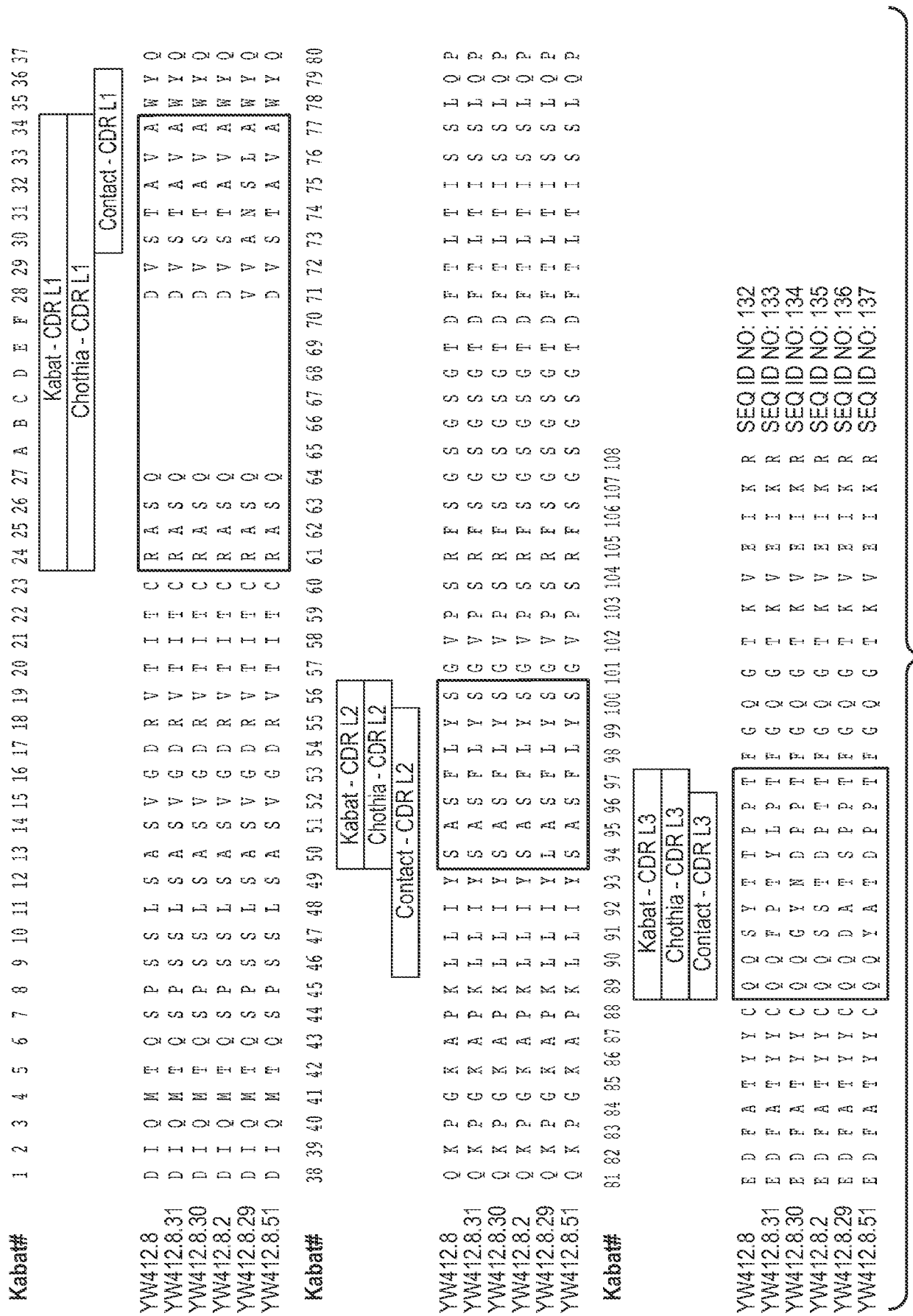

Kabat - CDR L1
Chothia - CDR L1
Contact - CDR L1
Kabat - CDR L2
Chothia - CDR L2
Contact - CDR L2
Kabat - CDR L3
Chothia - CDR L3
Contact - CDR L3
SEQ ID NO: 132
SEQ ID NO: 133
SEQ ID NO: 134
SEQ ID NO: 135
SEQ ID NO: 136
SEQ ID NO: 137

FIG. 16A

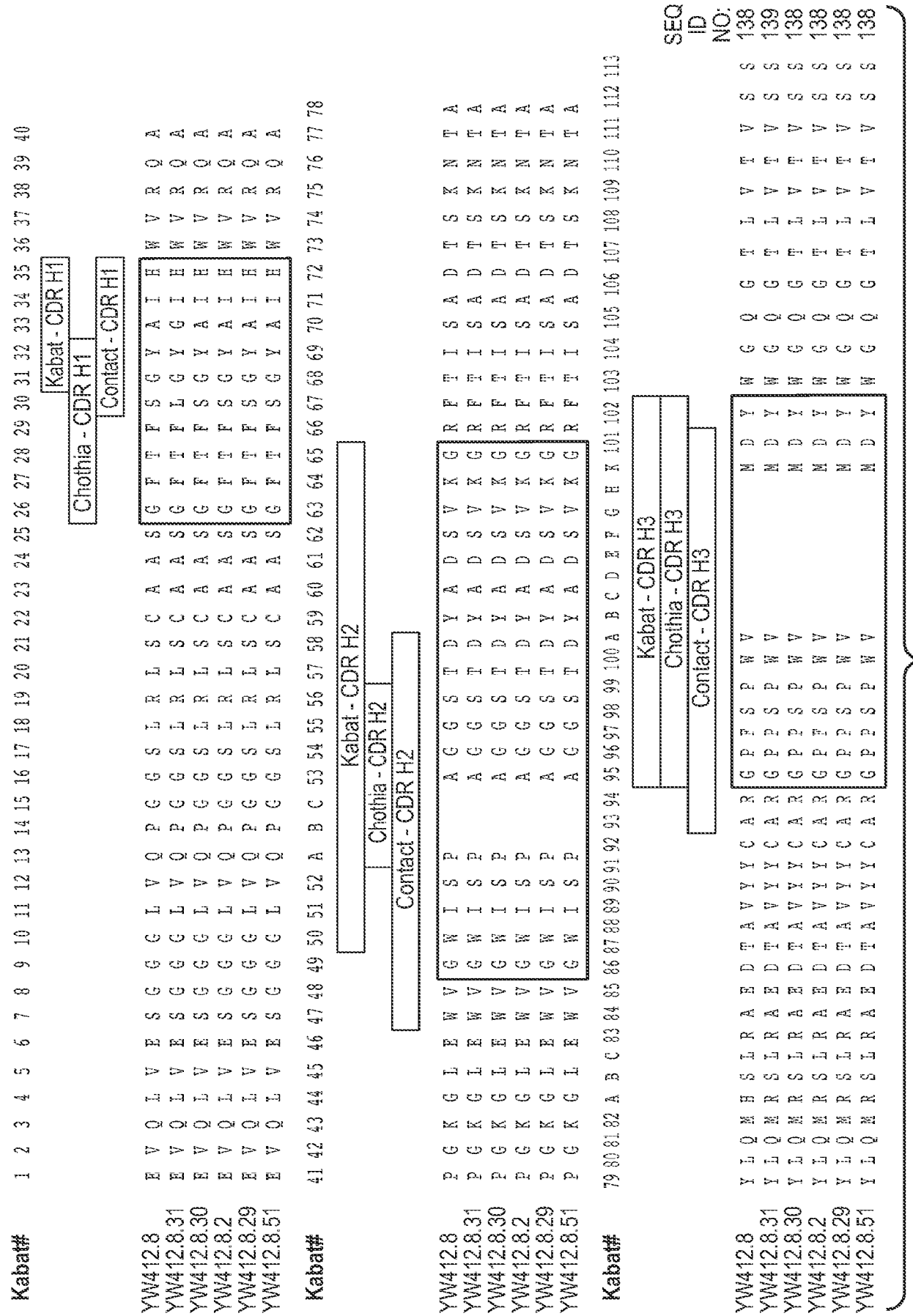

Kabat - CDR H1
Chothia - CDR H1
Contact - CDR H1
Kabat - CDR H2
Chothia - CDR H2
Contact - CDR H2
Kabat - CDR H3
Chothia - CDR H3
Contact - CDR H3
SEQ ID NO:
YW412.8 138
YW412.8.31 139
YW412.8.30 138
YW412.8.2 138
YW412.8.29 138
YW412.8.51 138

FIG. 16B

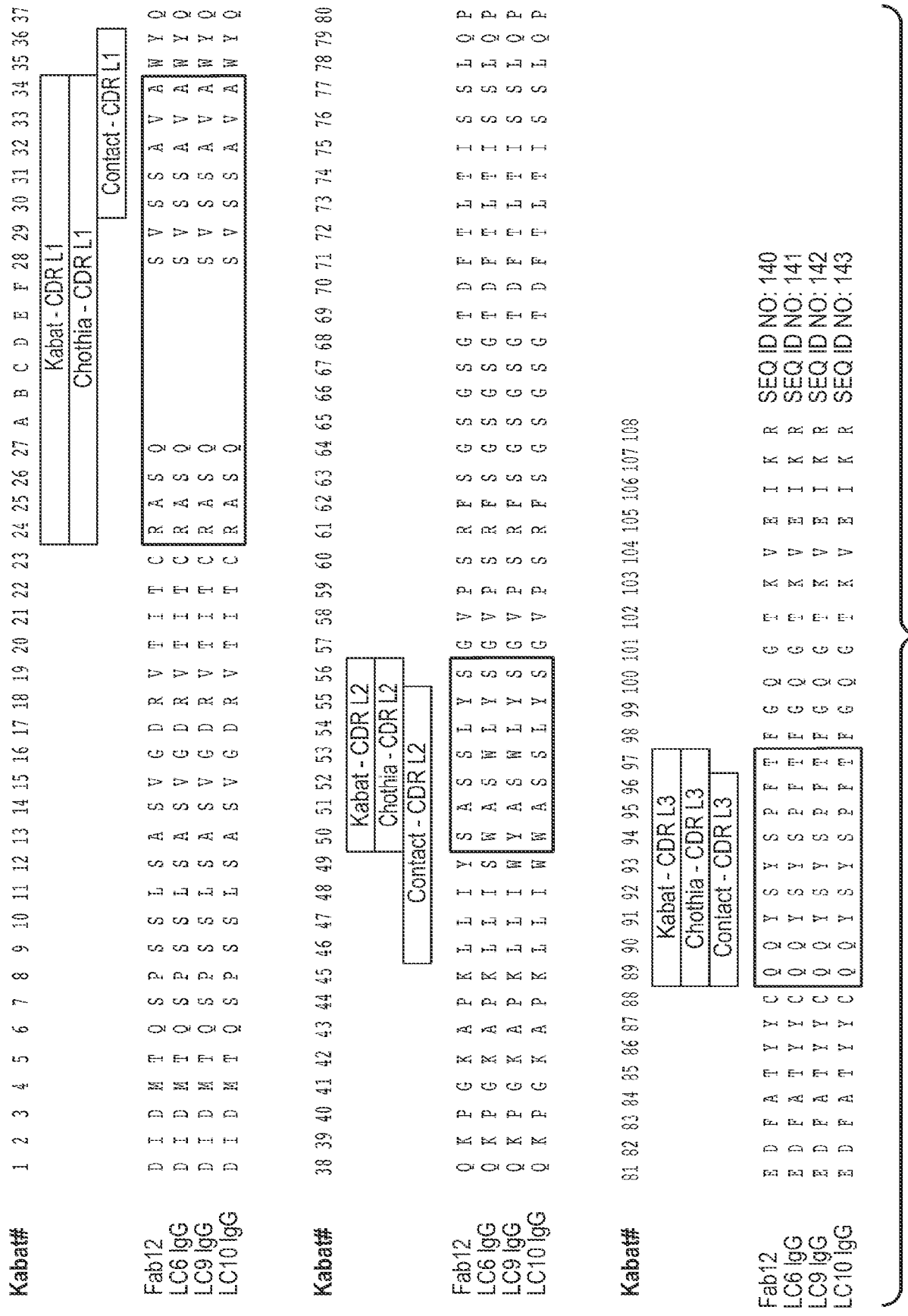

Kabat#
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 A B C D E F 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37
Kabat - CDR L1
Chothia - CDR L1
Contact - CDR L1
Fab12 D I D M T Q S P S S L S A S V G D R V T I T C R A S Q S V S S A V A W Y Q
LC6 IgG D I D M T Q S P S S L S A S V G D R V T I T C R A S Q S V S S A V A W Y Q
LC9 IgG D I D M T Q S P S S L S A S V G D R V T I T C R A S Q S V S S A V A W Y Q
LC10 IgG D I D M T Q S P S S L S A S V G D R V T I T C R A S Q S V S S A V A W Y Q
Kabat#
38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80
Kabat - CDR L2
Chothia - CDR L2
Contact - CDR L2
Fab12 Q K P G K A P K L L I Y S A S S L Y S G V P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L T I S S L Q P
LC6 IgG Q K P G K A P K L L I S W A S W L Y S G V P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L T I S S L Q P
LC9 IgG Q K P G K A P K L L I W Y A S W L Y S G V P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L T I S S L Q P
LC10 IgG Q K P G K A P K L L I W W A S S L Y S G V P S R F S G S G S G T D F T L T I S S L Q P
Kabat#
81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108
Kabat - CDR L3
Chothia - CDR L3
Contact - CDR L3
Fab12 E D F A T Y Y C Q Q Y S S Y S P F T F G Q G T K V E I K R SEQ ID NO: 140
LC6 IgG E D F A T Y Y C Q Q Y S Y S P F T F G Q G T K V E I K R SEQ ID NO: 141
LC9 IgG E D F A T Y Y C Q Q Y S Y S P F T F G Q G T K V E I K R SEQ ID NO: 142
LC10 IgG E D F A T Y Y C Q Q Y S Y S P F T F G Q G T K V E I K R SEQ ID NO: 143

FIG. 17A

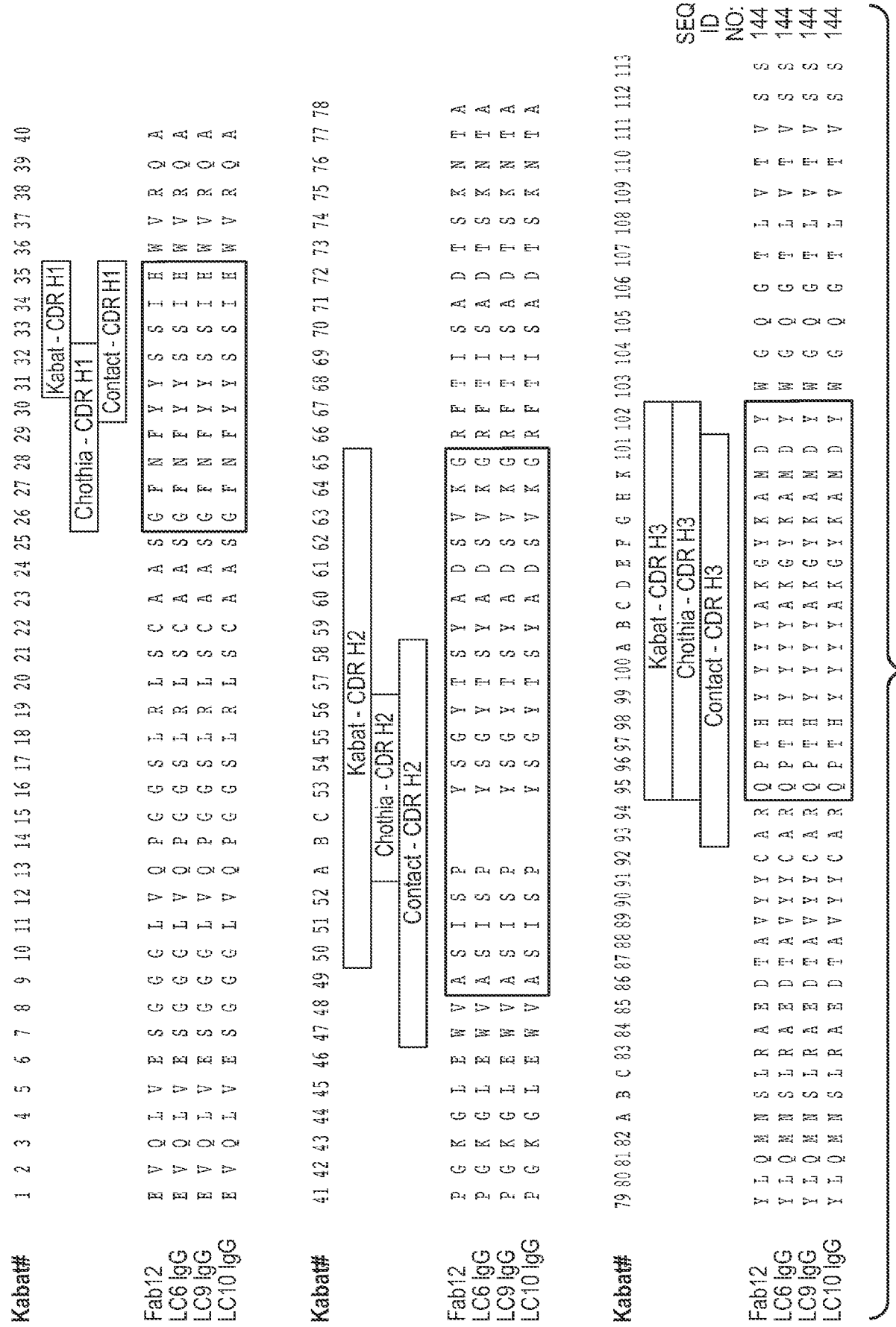

Kabat#
Fab12
LC6 IgG
LC9 IgG
LC10 IgG
Kabat - CDR H1
Chothia - CDR H1
Contact - CDR H1
Kabat - CDR H2
Chothia - CDR H2
Contact - CDR H2
Kabat - CDR H3
Chothia - CDR H3
Contact - CDR H3
SEQ ID NO:
144

FIG. 17B

```
  1  EVQLVESGGG LVQPGGSLRL SCAASGFTFS SYGMSWVRQA PGKGLELVAS
 51  INSNGGSTYY PDSVKGRFTI SRDNAKNSLY LQMNSLRAED TAVYYCASGD
101  YWGQGTTVTV SSASTKGPSV FPLAPCSRST SESTAALGCL VKDYFPEPVT
151  VSWNSGALTS GVHTFPAVLQ SSGLYSLSSV VTVPSSSLGT KTYTCNVDHK
201  PSNTKVDKRV ESKYGPPCPP CPAPEFLGGP SVFLFPPKPK DTLMISRTPE
251  VTCVVVDVSQ EDPEVQFNWY VDGVEVHNAK TKPREEQFNS TYRVVSVLTV
301  LHQDWLNGKE YKCKVSNKGL PSSIEKTISK AKGQPREPQV YTLPPSQEEM
351  TKNQVSLTCL VKGFYPSDIA VEWESNGQPE NNYKTTPPVL DSDGSFFLYS
401  RLTVDKSRWQ EGNVFSCSVM HEALHNHYTQ KSLSLSLG  (SEQ 10 NO: 145)
```

FIG. 18A

```
  1  DIVMTQSPLS LPVTPGEPAS ISCRSSQSLV YSNGDTYLHW YLQKPGQSPQ
 51  LLIYKVSNRF SGVPDRFSGS GSGTDFTLKI SRVEAEDVGV YYCSQSTHVP
101  WTFGQGTKVE IKRTVAAPSV FIFPPSDEQL KSGTASVVCL LNNFYPREAK
151  VQWKVDNALQ SGNSQESVTE QDSKDSTYSL SSTLTLSKAD YEKHKVYACE
201  VTHQGLSSPV TKSFNRGEC  (SEQ 10 NO: 146)
```

FIG. 18B

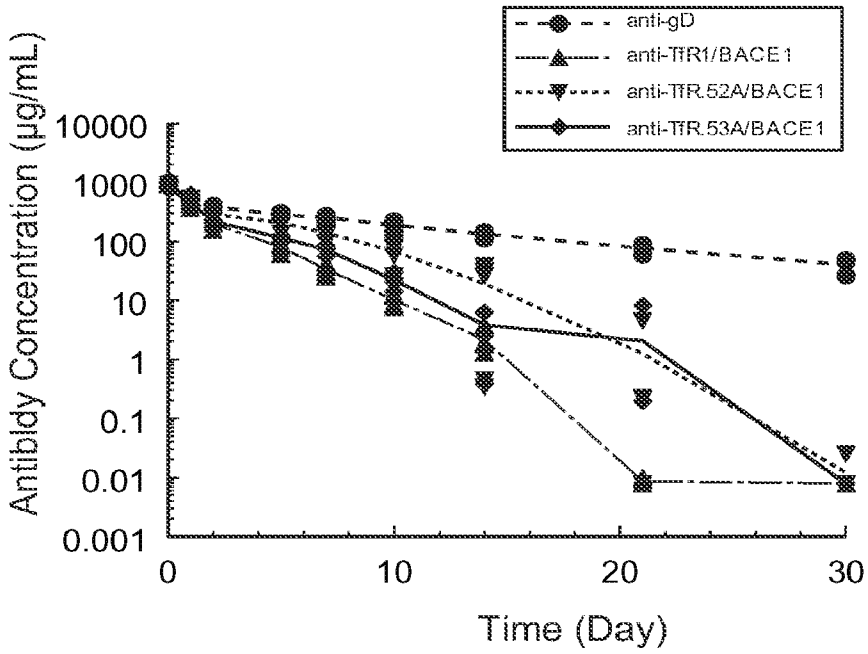

anti-gD
anti-TfR1/BACE1
anti-TfR.52A/BACE1
anti-TfR.53A/BACE1
Antibidy Concentration (µg/mL)
10000
1000
100
10
1
0.1
0.01
0.001
0
10
20
30
Time (Day)

FIG. 19

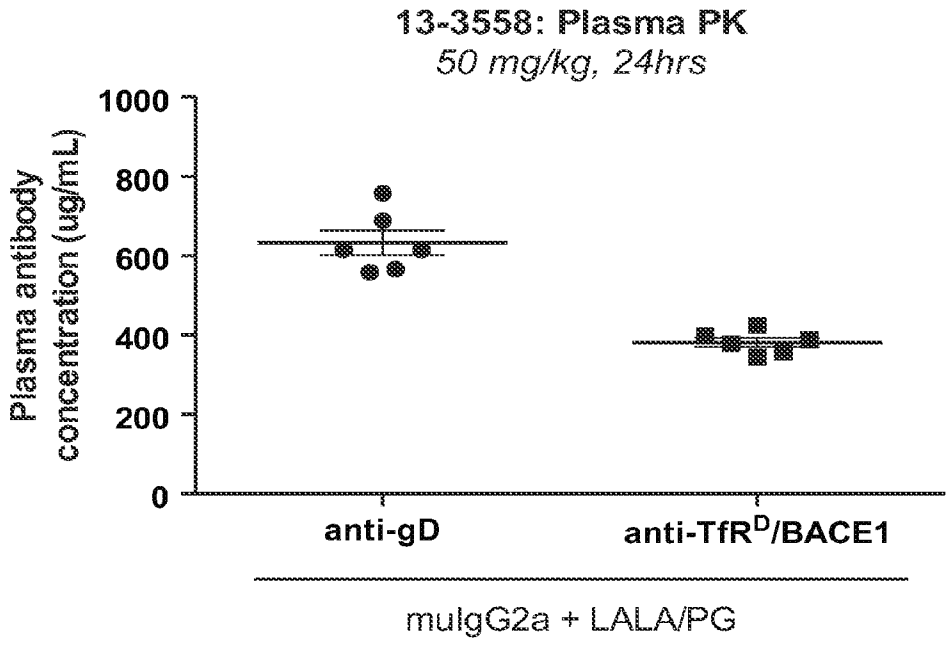

13-3558: Plasma PK
50 mg/kg, 24hrs
Plasma antibody concentration (ug/mL)
1000
800
600
400
200
0
anti-gD
anti-TfR^D/BACE1
mulgG2a + LALA/PG

FIG. 20

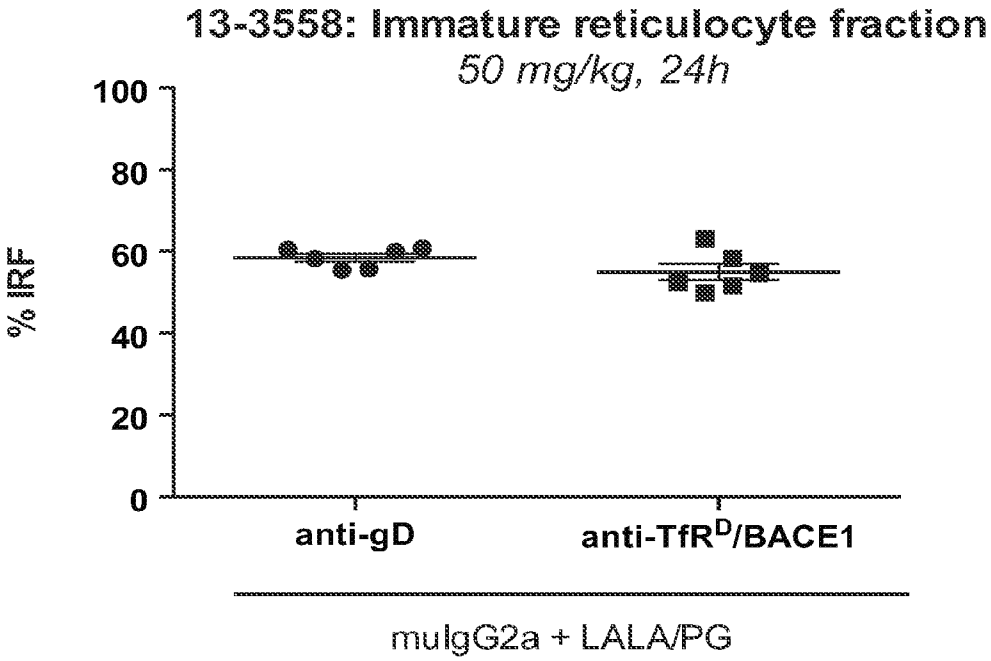


FIG. 21A

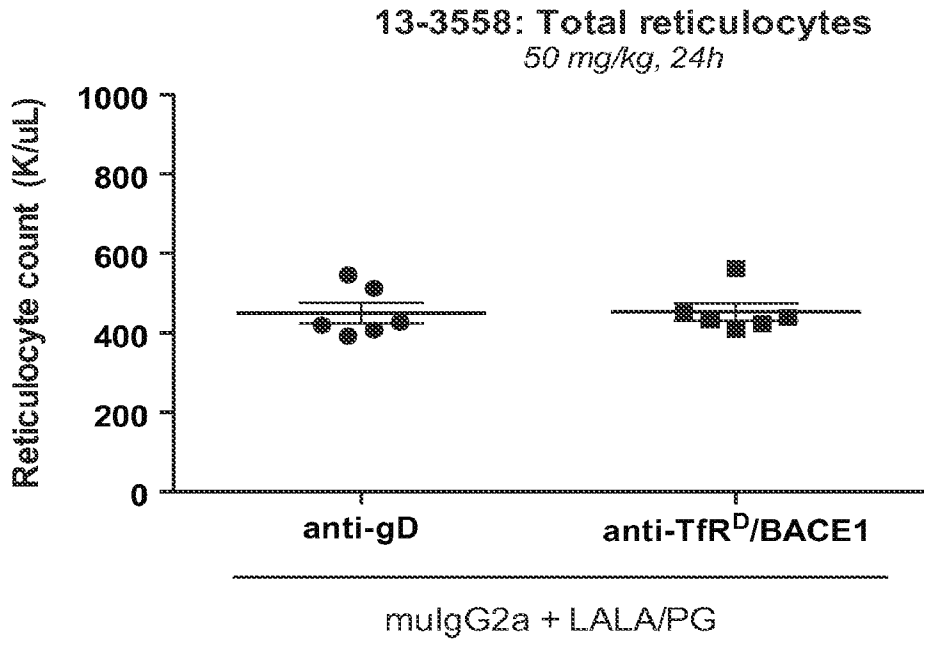


FIG. 21B

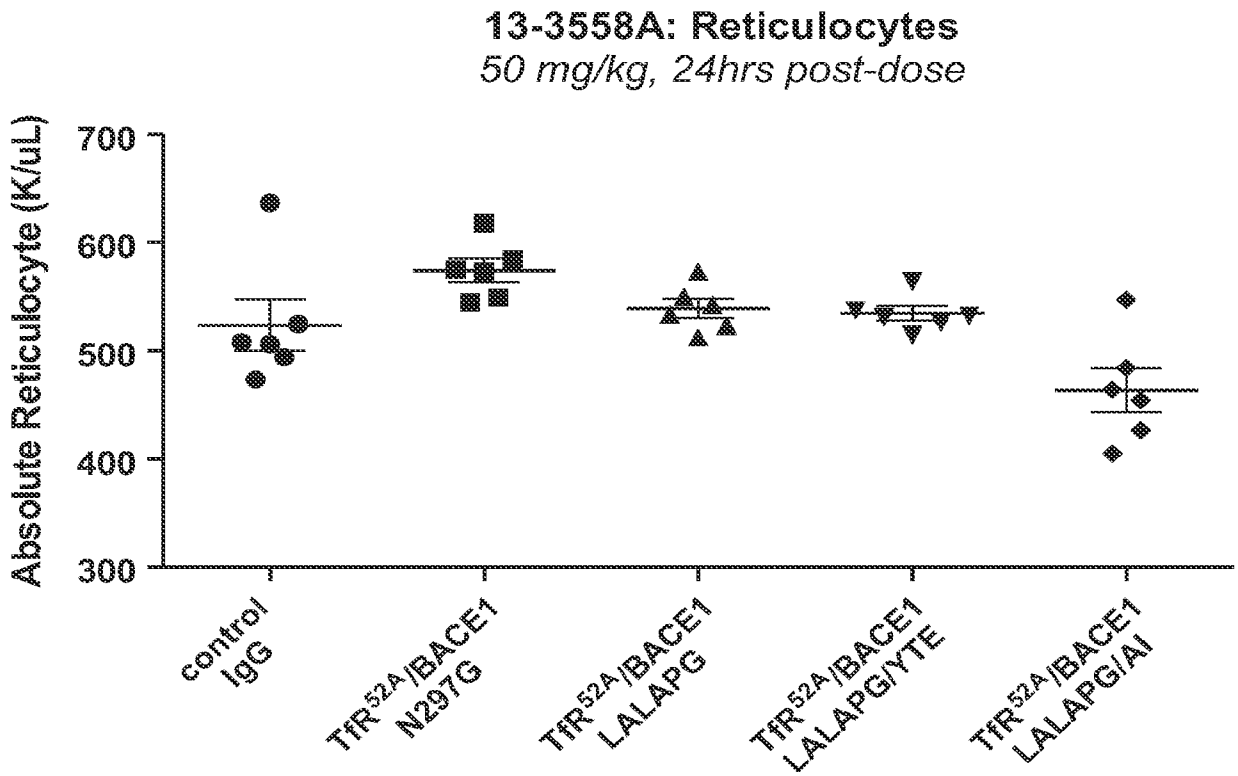

13-3558A: Reticulocytes
50 mg/kg, 24hrs post-dose
Absolute Reticulocyte (K/uL)
700
600
500
400
300
control IgG
TfR52A/BACE1 N297G
TfR52A/BACE1 LALAPG
TfR52A/BACE1 LALAPG/YTE
TfR52A/BACE1 LALAPG/AI

FIG. 22

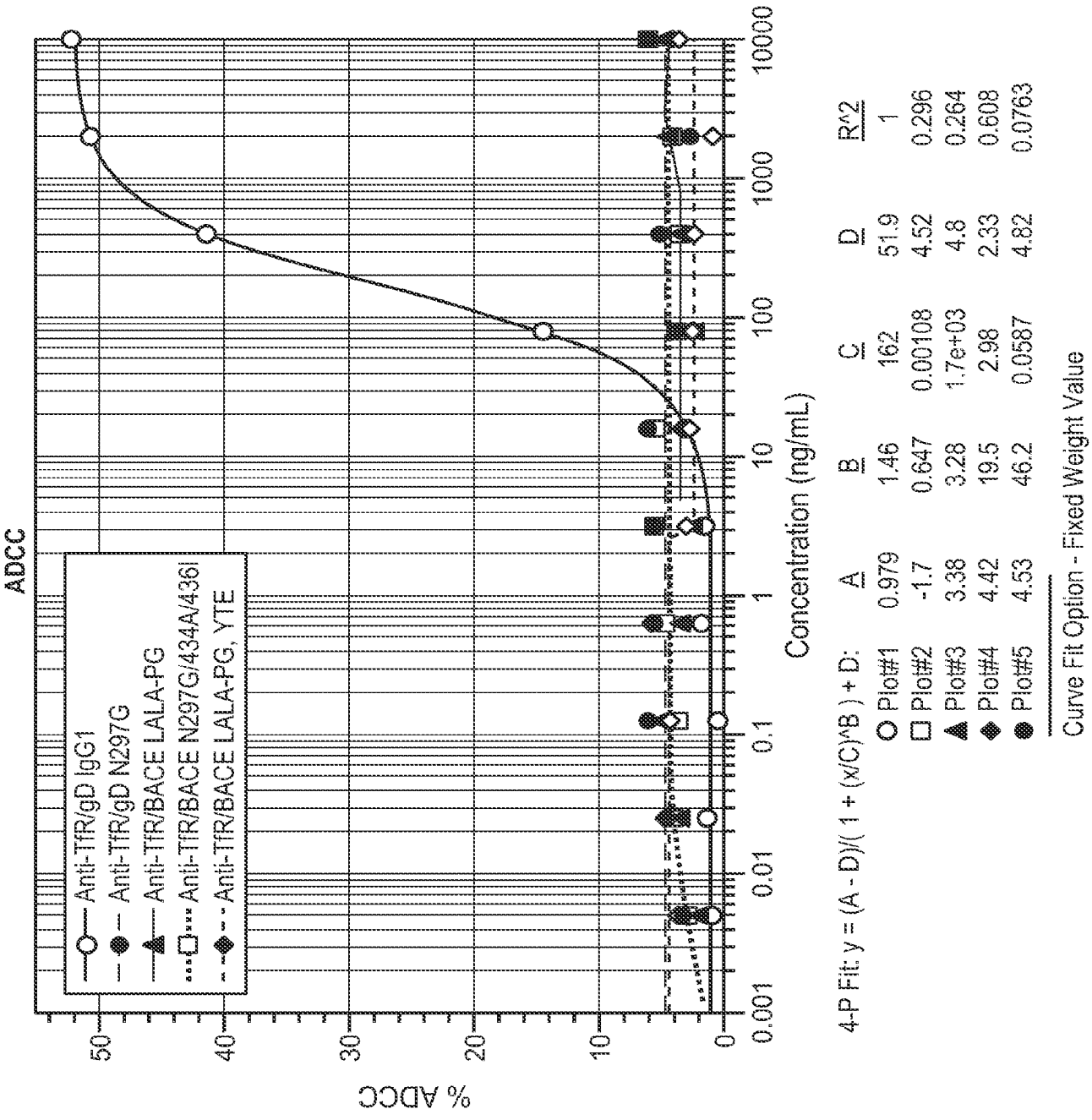

ADCC
Anti-TfR/gD IgG1
Anti-TfR/gD N297G
Anti-TfR/BACE LALA-PG
Anti-TfR/BACE N297G/434A/436I
Anti-TfR/BACE LALA-PG, YTE
% ADCC
Concentration (ng/mL)
0.001
0.01
0.1
1
10
100
1000
10000
0
10
20
30
40
50
4-P Fit: y = (A - D)/(1 + (x/C)^B) + D:
A B C D R^2
Plot#1 0.979 1.46 162 51.9 1
Plot#2 -1.7 0.647 0.00108 4.52 0.296
Plot#3 3.38 3.28 1.7e+03 4.8 0.264
Plot#4 4.42 19.5 2.98 2.33 0.608
Plot#5 4.53 46.2 0.0587 4.82 0.0763
Curve Fit Option - Fixed Weight Value

FIG. 23

Light Chain Variable Region

CDR L1 - Contact
CDR L1 - Chothia
CDR L1 - Kabat

Kabat Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42
hu15G11.v5 (TfR1)	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	S	P	S	S	L	S	A	S	V	G	D	R	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	D	N	L	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	K
hu15G11.52A	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	S	P	S	S	L	S	A	S	V	G	D	R	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	D	N	L	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	K
hu15G11.53A	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	S	P	S	S	L	S	A	S	V	G	D	R	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	D	N	L	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	K
hu15G11.92A (TfR2)	D	I	Q	M	T	Q	S	P	S	S	L	S	A	S	V	G	D	R	V	T	I	T	C	R	A	S	D	N	L	Y	S	N	L	A	W	Y	Q	Q	K	P	G	K

CDR L2 - Contact
CDR L2 - Chothia
CDR L2 - Kabat

Kabat Number	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84
hu15G11.v5 (TfR1)	S	P	K	L	L	V	Y	D	A	T	N	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	Y	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	P	E	D	F	A
hu15G11.52A	S	P	K	L	L	V	Y	D	A	T	N	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	Y	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	P	E	D	F	A
hu15G11.53A	S	P	K	L	L	V	Y	D	A	T	N	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	Y	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	P	E	D	F	A
hu15G11.92A (TfR2)	S	P	K	L	L	V	Y	D	A	T	N	L	A	D	G	V	P	S	R	F	S	G	S	G	S	G	T	D	Y	T	L	T	I	S	S	L	Q	P	E	D	F	A

CDR L3 - Contact
CDR L3 - Chothia
CDR L3 - Kabat

Kabat Number	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107
hu15G11.v5 (TfR1)	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	T	F	G	Q	G	T	K	V	E	I	K
hu15G11.52A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	T	F	G	Q	G	T	K	V	E	I	K
hu15G11.53A	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	W	G	T	P	L	T	F	G	Q	G	T	K	V	E	I	K
hu15G11.92A (TfR2)	T	Y	Y	C	Q	H	F	A	G	T	P	L	T	F	G	Q	G	T	K	V	E	I	K

FIG. 24A

Heavy Chain Variable Region

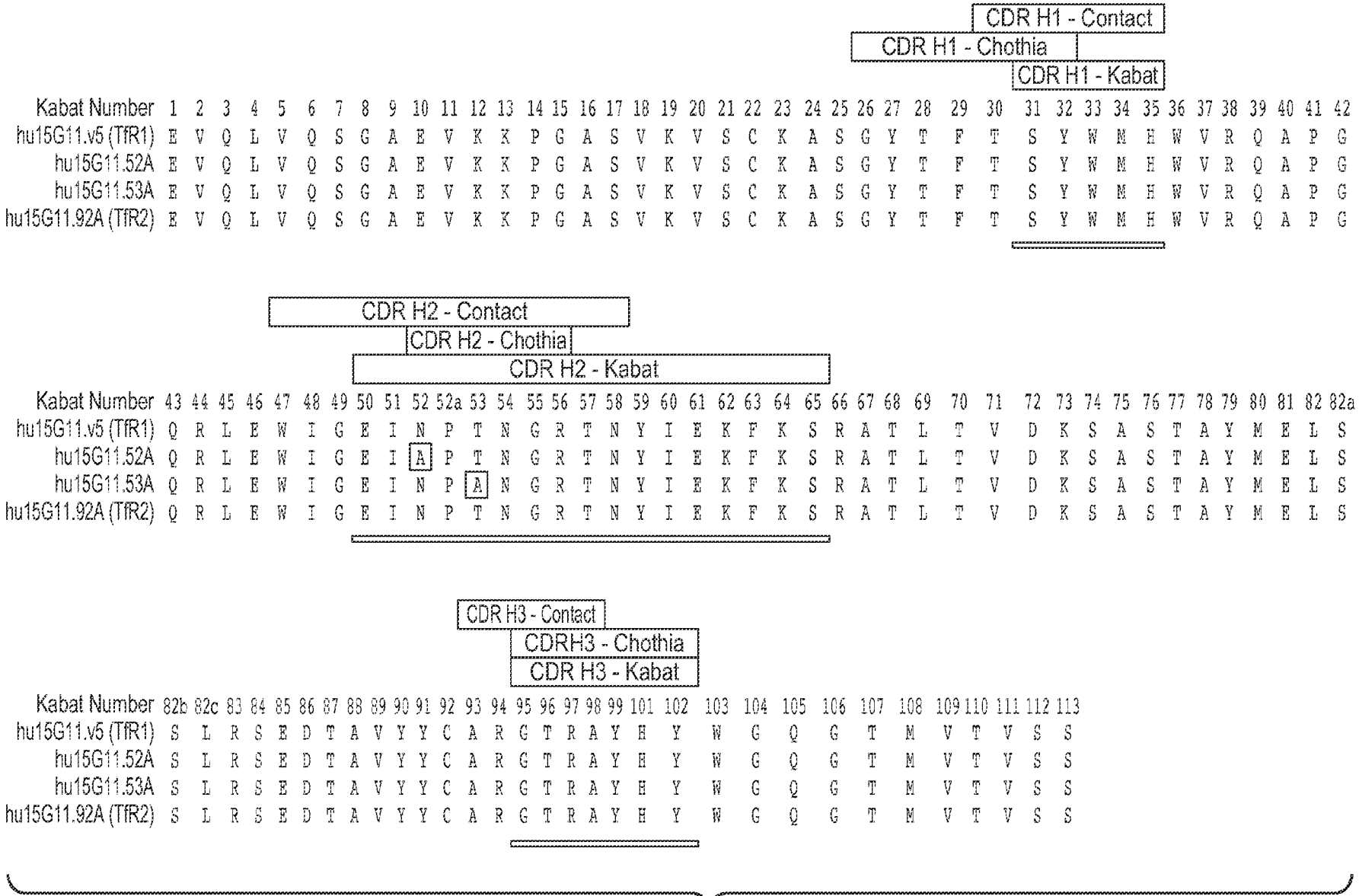


FIG. 24B

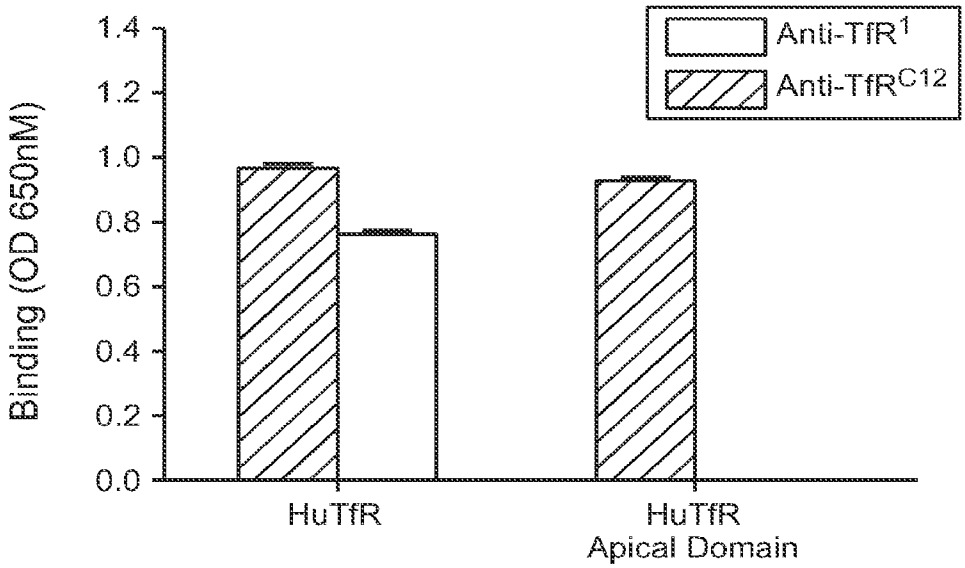

Binding (OD 650nM)
1.4
1.2
1.0
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0.0
Anti-TfR1
Anti-TfRC12
HuTfR
HuTfR
Apical Domain

FIG. 25

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2015/061405

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
INV. C07K16/28 C07K16/40 C07K16/46 C12N15/13 A61K39/395
A61P25/00
ADD.
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
C07K A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)
EPO-Internal, WPI Data, EMBASE, BIOSIS, Sequence Search

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	S. SOPPER ET AL: "Lymphocyte subsets and expression of differentiation markers in blood and lymphoid organs of rhesus monkeys", CYTOMETRY, vol. 29, no. 4, 1 December 1997 (1997-12-01), pages 351-362, XP055132941, ISSN: 0196-4763, DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0320(19971201)29:4<351::AID-CYTO12>3.3.CO;2-6	1
Y	table 1 abstract -----	2-61

-/--

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.

[X] See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
12 February 2016	15/03/2016

Name and mailing address of the ISA/	Authorized officer
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Saame, Tina

6

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (April 2005)

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 2013/177062 A2 (GENENTECH INC [US]; HOFFMANN LA ROCHE [CH]) 28 November 2013 (2013-11-28) cited in the application page 56, line 10 - line 12; claims 1,92, 93, 95, 121, 97-105, 107, 108, 112, 113, page 6, line 20 - line 21 claims 115-119, 123, 127	2-61
Y	WO 2012/075037 A1 (GENENTECH INC [US]; HOFFMANN LA ROCHE [CH]; DENNIS MARK [US]; WATTS RY) 7 June 2012 (2012-06-07) page 6, line 20; claims 1,41,	2-61
Y	YU Y JOY ET AL: "Boosting brain uptake of a therapeutic antibody by reducing its affinity for a transcytosis target", SCIENCE TRANSLATIONAL MEDICINE, AAAS - AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF SCIENCE, US, vol. 3, no. 84 84ra44, 25 May 2011 (2011-05-25), pages 1-8, XP008148394, ISSN: 1946-6242, DOI: 10.1126/SCITRANSLMED.3002230 cited in the application figures 2,5	2-61
Y	PAUL STEVEN M: "Therapeutic antibodies for brain disorders", SCIENCE TRANSLATIONAL MEDICINE, AAAS - AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF SCIENCE, US, vol. 3, no. 84, 25 May 2011 (2011-05-25), page 84ps20, XP009155720, ISSN: 1946-6242 figure 1	2-61
Y	COUCH JESSICA A ET AL: "Addressing safety liabilities of TfR bispecific antibodies that cross the blood-brain barrier", SCIENCE TRANSLATIONAL MEDICINE, AAAS - AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF SCIENCE, US, vol. 5, no. 183, 1 May 2013 (2013-05-01), XP008163922, ISSN: 1946-6242, DOI: 10.1126/SCITRANSLMED.3005338 abstract	2-61

-/--

6

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	ATWAL JASVINDER K ET AL: "A therapeutic antibody targeting BACE1 inhibits amyloid-[beta] production in vivo", SCIENCE TRANSLATIONAL MEDICINE, AAAS - AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE ADVANCEMENT OF SCIENCE, US, vol. 3, no. 84, 25 May 2011 (2011-05-25), XP009155719, ISSN: 1946-6242 cited in the application page 10, paragraph 1 abstract -----	1-61
X,P	WO 2014/189973 A2 (GENENTECH INC [US]; HOFFMANN LA ROCHE [CH]) 27 November 2014 (2014-11-27) claims 1-5,16, 17, 21-74; examples 1-3; sequences 105, 108, 150, 151, 152, 153, 158, 160 -----	1-61

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US2015/061405

Box No. I Nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence(s) (Continuation of item 1.c of the first sheet)

1. With regard to any nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence disclosed in the international application, the international search was carried out on the basis of a sequence listing:

   a. [X] forming part of the international application as filed:

      [X] in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.

      [ ] on paper or in the form of an image file.

   b. [ ] furnished together with the international application under PCT Rule 13*ter*.1(a) for the purposes of international search only in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file.

   c. [ ] furnished subsequent to the international filing date for the purposes of international search only:

      [ ] in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file (Rule 13*ter*.1(a)).

      [ ] on paper or in the form of an image file (Rule 13*ter*.1(b) and Administrative Instructions, Section 713).

2. [ ] In addition, in the case that more than one version or copy of a sequence listing has been filed or furnished, the required statements that the information in the subsequent or additional copies is identical to that forming part of the application as filed or does not go beyond the application as filed, as appropriate, were furnished.

3. Additional comments:

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No
PCT/US2015/061405

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 2013177062 A2	28-11-2013	AU 2013266611 A1	11-12-2014
		CA 2873929 A1	28-11-2013
		CL 2014003161 A1	27-02-2015
		CN 104520325 A	15-04-2015
		CO 7151532 A2	29-12-2014
		EP 2852618 A2	01-04-2015
		HK 1206369 A1	08-01-2016
		JP 2015523336 A	13-08-2015
		KR 20150014503 A	06-02-2015
		PH 12014502602 A1	02-02-2015
		SG 11201407669Q A	30-12-2014
		TW 201400132 A	01-01-2014
		US 2015353639 A1	10-12-2015
		WO 2013177062 A2	28-11-2013
WO 2012075037 A1	07-06-2012	AR 084020 A1	17-04-2013
		AU 2011336716 A1	09-05-2013
		CA 2818173 A1	07-06-2012
		CL 2013001535 A1	07-03-2014
		CN 103443125 A	11-12-2013
		CO 6721052 A2	31-07-2013
		CR 20130255 A	18-09-2013
		EA 201390785 A1	29-11-2013
		EC SP13012724 A	30-08-2013
		EP 2646470 A1	09-10-2013
		JP 2014500886 A	16-01-2014
		KR 20130137654 A	17-12-2013
		MA 34749 B1	03-12-2013
		PE 09812014 A1	20-08-2014
		SG 190900 A1	31-07-2013
		TW 201305200 A	01-02-2013
		US 2012171120 A1	05-07-2012
		US 2015329636 A1	19-11-2015
		WO 2012075037 A1	07-06-2012
WO 2014189973 A2	27-11-2014	AU 2014268726 A1	19-11-2015
		CA 2908743 A1	27-11-2014
		SG 11201509566R A	30-12-2015
		TW 201500373 A	01-01-2015
		US 2015110791 A1	23-04-2015
		WO 2014189973 A2	27-11-2014